

# Typesetting Poetry Collections with `poemscol`\*

John Burt  
`burt@brandeis.edu`

20 December 2017

## Abstract

`poemscol` provides macros for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for setting collections of poetry. It is especially suited for setting collections of poetry in which several volumes are combined, such as in a critical edition of a poet's Collected Poems. It provides the structures required to produce a critical edition of the kind specified by the Modern Language Association's Committee on Scholarly Editions, and it automatically marks every occasion where a stanza break falls on a page break.

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Dependencies and compatibility with other packages</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1	General . . . . .	6
2.2	Prose sections . . . . .	6
2.3	Multi-layer footnotes . . . . .	7
2.4	Special running header for long poems . . . . .	7
2.5	Verse drama and <code>dramatist</code> . . . . .	7
2.6	Parallel text editions . . . . .	7
2.7	Crop marks . . . . .	8
2.8	Poem titles with marginal references . . . . .	8
2.9	Incompatibility with <code>memoir</code> and <code>verse</code> . . . . .	8
2.10	Conflict with BibLaTeX . . . . .	8
2.11	Compatibility with earlier versions of <code>poemscol</code> . . . . .	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Marking up individual poems</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1	The title of the poem . . . . .	10
3.2	The body of the poem . . . . .	11
3.3	Special line markup . . . . .	13

---

\*This document corresponds to `poemscol` 2.95, dated 20 December 2017.

<b>4</b>	<b>Making a table of contents</b>	<b>16</b>
4.1	Setup . . . . .	16
4.2	Contents entries for notes sections and the index . . . . .	17
<b>5</b>	<b>Making an index of titles and first lines</b>	<b>18</b>
5.1	Setup . . . . .	18
5.2	Making multiple indices . . . . .	18
<b>6</b>	<b>Collections with multiple volumes</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Recording textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes</b>	<b>20</b>
7.1	Setup for endnote sections . . . . .	20
7.2	Textual notes of various kinds . . . . .	21
<b>8</b>	<b>Creating new kinds of endnote</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Multi-level footnotes</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Notes at the end of poems</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Printing endnotes and index</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Special Cases</b>	<b>30</b>
12.1	Epigraphs, attributions etc. . . . .	30
12.2	Appending Publication Date . . . . .	30
12.3	Pausing line numbering . . . . .	30
12.4	Quoted verse . . . . .	31
12.5	Multiline poem titles . . . . .	31
12.6	Poems in sections . . . . .	31
12.7	Poetic sequences . . . . .	31
12.8	Titles with marginal markers . . . . .	34
12.9	Empty poem titles and italicized poem titles . . . . .	35
12.10	Problem titles . . . . .	36
12.11	Customizing titles . . . . .	37
12.12	Visual formatting . . . . .	38
<b>13</b>	<b>Customizing page geometry and page styles</b>	<b>39</b>
13.1	Font sizes, skips, sinks, indents, and penalties . . . . .	39
13.2	Customizing page styles . . . . .	40
13.3	Special page style for long poems . . . . .	40
13.4	Page geometry and type leading . . . . .	41
<b>14</b>	<b>Prose Sections with line numbers</b>	<b>41</b>
14.1	Setup . . . . .	41
14.2	Endnotes for prose sections . . . . .	43

<b>15 Paragraph and sentence annotation</b>	<b>44</b>
15.1 Setup . . . . .	44
15.2 Cross references by sentence and paragraph . . . . .	46
15.3 End notes by sentence and paragraph . . . . .	46
15.4 Footnotes by sentence and paragraph . . . . .	47
15.5 Bible chapter and verse . . . . .	47
<b>16 Parallel text editions</b>	<b>47</b>
16.1 Setup for parallel texts in verse . . . . .	47
16.2 Parallel texts and on the fly note types . . . . .	48
16.3 Parallel texts and generic note types . . . . .	49
16.4 Parallel text labels . . . . .	50
16.5 Parallel prose passages . . . . .	51
<b>17 Using poemscol in a multilingual world</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>18 A sample driver file</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>19 A sample poem markup</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>20 A sample divider page</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>21 Implementation</b>	<b>57</b>
21.1 Page geometry and crop marks . . . . .	57
21.1.1 Internal font size commands . . . . .	58
21.2 Miscellaneous dimensions and constants . . . . .	59
21.3 Verse . . . . .	60
21.4 Miscellaneous internal counters . . . . .	63
21.5 Miscellaneous token lists . . . . .	64
21.6 Miscellaneous booleans . . . . .	64
21.7 Defining page styles . . . . .	65
21.8 Environments: poem, and stanza . . . . .	68
21.9 Environments: main title page, divider pages . . . . .	70
21.10 Marginal line numbers, verse lines, line cross references, etc. . . . .	71
21.11 Setup for contents, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes . . . . .	78
21.12 Book, volume, and volume section titles . . . . .	83
21.13 Commands for setting titles of poems and sequences . . . . .	85
21.13.1 Poem Titles . . . . .	85
21.13.2 Poetic Sequences: Setting the Main Title . . . . .	91
21.13.3 Sections of poetic sequences . . . . .	91
21.13.4 Subsections of sequences . . . . .	94
21.14 Epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, dedications . . . . .	101
21.15 Tools used for making note sections . . . . .	101
21.16 Commands to make notes and send info to contents . . . . .	103
21.17 Emendations and explanatory notes . . . . .	106

21.18 Making new notes sections . . . . .	107
21.19 Prose sections . . . . .	111
21.20 Annotation by Sentence and Paragraph Number . . . . .	116
21.21 Using Footnotes . . . . .	123
21.22 Notes at the foot of individual poems . . . . .	124
21.23 Embarrassing kludges . . . . .	127
21.24 Marking stanza breaks on page turns . . . . .	128
21.25 Parallel Texts . . . . .	128
21.26 Parallel Texts in Prose . . . . .	153
21.27 Finishing up . . . . .	155
21.28 Visual formatting . . . . .	159
21.29 Special environments: <code>cjquotation</code> and <code>theindex</code> . . . . .	160

## 1 Introduction

`poemscol` provides the structures necessary for editing a critical edition of a volume of poems or of a collection of a poet’s works. `poemscol` numbers the lines, and produces separate, formatted endnote sections for emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes (or, optionally, multiple layers of footnotes), tying each note to the range of lines upon which it is a comment.

Producing line numbers for verse is something for which  $\text{\LaTeX}$  would seem to be especially suited. A line of verse, after all, is not a carriage return but a logical unit, an element of versification more than of typesetting, perhaps running over several physical lines, or perhaps split into half-lines as speakers or subjects change. With `poemscol` you mark lines, stanzas, and entire poems up as logical units, and  $\text{\LaTeX}$  does the formatting and counting. Once you have marked out the logical units of the poem, `poemscol` will automatically mark every textual note, emendation, or explanatory note with the range of line numbers to which it applies.

Editions of Collected Poetry might also require special structures to reflect the fact that they are made up of the contents of several volumes of poetry. In particular, such editions require facilities for setting up specially formatted divider pages between volumes. They also require tables of contents and other front matter, as well as an index of titles and first lines (or, optionally, several separate indices) and other sorts of back matter. `poemscol` automatically generates a table of contents, an index of titles and first lines, and divider pages for the sections of the volumes. It produces running headers of the form “Emendations to pp. xx-yy” for the note sections.

In poetry which does not have a regular stanzaic form, it is useful to be able to mark automatically occasions where there is a stanza break at the bottom of a page which the reader might not notice. Doing this by hand is not only tedious and easy to get wrong, but also a process you will have to start over again if anything about your volume changes, if you add a poem, say, or even decide to break a title across two lines. `poemscol` takes care of this process, so that the editor need never

worry about it, automatically marking cases where the page break coincides with a stanza break with a symbol.

`poemscol` includes facilities for typesetting parallel text editions of poems, for instance to compare different versions or translations of the same poem on the recto and verso pages. `poemscol` will keep the line numbering of the two texts separate, will provide separate endnote sections for textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes for the different texts, and will also make marginal markers to tie lines in the verso text to the equivalent line in the recto text.

`poemscol` is also suited for verse drama, and the package `dramatist` has been modified to work with `poemscol`.

`poemscol` can provide line numbers and notes for prose sections such as the author's introduction or prose poetry. (It can also handle inset prose passages in the midst of verse, pausing and restarting verse line numbering as the editor desires.) It also has some limited facilities for typesetting and annotating line-numbered parallel passages in prose. `poemscol` is not, however, designed for typesetting critical editions of large scale prose works, although very possibly it could be tweaked to work. For critical editions of prose works, several other packages are available, including the `EDMAC` format, a  $\text{\TeX}$  format analogous to but distinct from  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , by John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk, or `ledmac`, a port of `EDMAC` into  $\text{\LaTeX}$  originally by Peter Wilson and now maintained as `reledmac` by Maïeul Rouquette, or `ednotes`, a completely independent set of macros for critical editions which builds on `manypar` and `lineno`, by Uwe Lück.

`poemscol` can annotate prose marked in “paragraph number: sentence number” format (or bible chapter and verse).

`poemscol` also provides the ability to make cross references to verse line numbers, to line numbers in prose sections, or to paragraph and sentence numbers in sections with “paragraph and sentence” annotation.

`poemscol` also provides a few bells and whistles, such as the ability to create new endnote or footnote sections on the fly, the ability to center a poem on the longest line (or to move the margin of the verse block wherever you wish), and the ability to place a mark in the margin indicating where in the apparatus commentary on that line can be found. For long poems, `poemscol` can provide a special running header which indicates which lines are to be found on the page. It has a special command to place the publication date under the poem just at the left margin of the verse block even when the verse block is centered. `poemscol` also provides notes to be placed just after a poem (rather than at the bottom of the page or in the endnote sections). It gives the user fine control over the placement of line numbers and the placement and format of titles including multi-line titles. The user can choose whether to concatenate the notes for a poem into a single paragraph, or to give each note a separate paragraph. The user can print the notes in single or multicolumn format. The names of things like the Contents can be changed to facilitate editions in languages other than English. Just about every feature of `poemscol` can be easily customized.

The best features of `poemscol` are of course simply that it is  $\text{\TeX}$ : it uses  $\text{\TeX}$ 's automatic kerning and setting of ligatures, its algorithm for justifying lines (in prose sections), and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's way of setting verse.

Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to typeset critical editions offers more advantages than simply the ability to automate tedious and easy to fumble tasks.  $\text{\TeX}$  compilers have the ability to produce output in Adobe pdf format. Adobe pdf output can be used as camera ready copy, saving your publisher time and expense, and perhaps making a marginally economic critical edition a bit easier to bring to press. Furthermore, since typesetting the edition yourself in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  obviates the publisher's own typesetting of your text, it removes another possible source of new errors. (You should expect to work with your publisher on the final design of the book, but  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is a flexible language which will enable you to reproduce most book designs.)

Editions made in the formats of proprietary software such as QuarkXPress<sup>®</sup> or InDesign<sup>®</sup> will become not only obsolete but unreadable if those programs pass from use. Since your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  sources for your edition are in ASCII, or perhaps Unicode, they provide a permanent record of your local intentions at every point in your edition, whether or not those who wish to consult your files have access to a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  compiler, or indeed (since most of the macros have self-explanatory names) whether or not they can read  $\text{\LaTeX}$  code.

Although  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is a typesetting language, not a content markup language, the ability to create new commands which the language offers comes very close to enabling one to realize the ideal of completely separating content markup from formatting. One advantage of this kind of markup is that even if the appearance of the poem on the page may be ambiguous, the editor's intentions about the logical structure of the poem will be preserved in the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  source. Should you wish later to produce an electronic edition of your work, either using XML or the SGML markup approved by the Text Encoding Initiative, transforming your texts from  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to XML would largely (although not entirely) be a matter of performing a series of global search-and-replaces, and could conceivably be done with a perl script.

## 2 Dependencies and compatibility with other packages

### 2.1 General

`poemscol` depends upon several other packages, which you should be sure you have in your preamble and search path: `fancyhdr` for managing the running headers, `makeidx` and `multicol` for managing the index, `geometry`, and `ifthen` and `keyval` to simplify page geometry.

If you are planning to generate multiple indices, substitute `splitindex` for `makeidx` in your list of packages.

### 2.2 Prose sections

If you plan to number lines in prose contexts, and to make textual notes, emendations, or explanatory notes in prose contexts, you will need to add the `lineno`

package to your preamble. I use the “right” and “modulo” options with this package, but you can set the options however you wish to make how you number the lines of prose sections consistent with how you number the lines of verse sections.

## 2.3 Multi-layer footnotes

If you plan to use paragraph-formatted footnotes rather than endnotes, you should load `manyfoot`. You should load it with the “ruled,” and “para” options. (`poemscol`’s footnote commands are just a wrapper around `manyfoot`.) `manyfoot` inherited some of the limitations of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in dealing with long inserts at the end of the page, so you may have to do some fiddling. As fixes to these problems emerge, I will incorporate them into `poemscol`. `manyfoot` does not allow multiple paragraph footnotes when typesetting in “para” mode. This is probably a feature, not a bug, since one would want such notes to be set in several paragraphs, rather than running them together into one, as `manyfoot` would naturally want to do in para mode. For that reason, I have defined the two traditional classes of note in which multiple paragraph notes are likely to appear, “sources,” and “explanatory notes,” to be typeset in “plain” mode, which opens a new paragraph with each note. If your textual notes or emendations sections also have multiple paragraph notes, you should re-define them in order to produce footnotes in plain rather than in para mode, if you wish to produce footnotes rather than endnotes.

`manyfoot` sometimes gets into conflicts with other packages over the number of `\counts` it uses, causing  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to complain that there is no room for a `\newcount`. If this happens, issue `\usepackage{etex}` and `\reserveinserts`.

## 2.4 Special running header for long poems

For long poems, it is a convenience to have a running header that includes information about what lines of the poem appear on that page in the form firstline–lastline. The `fancypagestyle longpoem` will set that information in the running header. That page style uses the `\marks` mechanism, and requires more `\marks` than are available by default. To use it, you will need to add the `etex` and `emarks` packages to your preamble.

## 2.5 Verse drama and dramatist

Massimiliano Dominici has made his `dramatist` package compatible with `poemscol`, for which I am very grateful. Versions 1.2a or later of `dramatist` are compatible with versions 2.3 or later of `poemscol`.

## 2.6 Parallel text editions

If you are using the six pre-defined endnote sections for parallel text editions (`\rectotextnote`, `\versotextnote`, `\rectoemendation`, `\versoemendation`, `\rectoexplanatory`, `\versoexplanatory` and their prose equivalents

`\rectoprosetextnote` and so on) you won't need to add any new packages. If you are defining your own endnote sections using `\definewnotetype` you may need the `\keeptitlestraight` hack described below at section 16, page 47. If you use `\keeptitlesstraight` you should add `etoolbox` to your package list.

## 2.7 Crop marks

`poemscol` no longer provides cropmarks, but is compatible with the style packages that do. I use `crop`, with the `letter`, `pdftex`, `cam`, and `center` options.

## 2.8 Poem titles with marginal references

If you are using the `\JHpoemtitle` alternate form of the `\poemtitle` command, you need to add `mparhack` to your package list, to make sure that the marginal references `\JHpoemtitle` adds appear on the correct side of the page. You should make sure that `poemscol` is the very last package you load in your preamble, or at least is loaded after those packages upon which it depends.

## 2.9 Incompatibility with memoir and verse

Unfortunately, `poemscol` is not compatible with the `memoir` class and the `verse` package, because they share some command names. I will eventually prepare a workaround for this problem.

## 2.10 Conflict with BibLaTeX

`BIBTEX` works with `poemscol` with no problem. But a bug I haven't yet tracked down (probably involving `\makeatletter`) complicates the use of `BibLaTeX`. To use `BibLaTeX` you will need to open up the `.bbl` file. You will find near the top the following lines:

```
\makeatletter
\@ifundefined{ver@biblatex.sty}
  {\@latex@error
{Missing 'biblatex' package}
{The bibliography requires the 'biblatex' package.}
\aftergroup\endinput}
{}
```

Just comment out these lines and you will be able to use the `.bbl` file as usual.

## 2.11 Compatibility with earlier versions of poemscol

Making `poemscol` compatible with `lineno` required me also to change the commands for turning verse line numbering on and off, which means that version 2.3 of `poemscol` is incompatible with prior versions. The old command `\makelinenumbers`



has been replaced with `\makeverselinenumbers` to distinguish it from a command from the `lineno` world. (`\makelinenumbers` will still work, but I have deprecated it.) To turn on verse line numbering, issue `\makeverselinenumbers`. Because the counter “linenumber” has been changed to “verselinenumber,” you must use `\global\verselinenumbersfalse` to turn off line numbering, rather than `\global\linenumbersfalse` as before.

Up to version 2.44 `poemscol` borrowed the code for `\sidepar` non-floating marginal paragraphs from the `memoir` class, and also made `\leftsidepar` and `\rightsidepar` commands on their model. Version 2.46 modified Peter Wilson’s original code for `\sidepar`, so therefore I have changed the names of `\sidepar`, `\leftsidepar`, and `\rightsidepar` to `\pmclsidepar`, `\pmclleftsidepar` and `\pmclrightsidepar` respectively. If you used any of these commands in your files, you will need to change their names.

Up to version 2.5 the `\definewnotetype` command took four arguments, using the third argument for both the running header for the notes section and for the entry in the table of contents. In order to make it easier to handle titles in languages other than English I have found it necessary to separate these two uses, so `\definewnotetype` now takes five arguments. You will need to retrofit files that use the old version of this command. You can see the details at section 8, page 25.

### 3 Marking up individual poems

First, a word about the command names. The command names may seem ugly and long. And there are separate commands for many tasks that seem closely related, such as a command to mark the title of a section of a poetic sequence, and a separate command to mark a subsection. But the names do describe pretty much what each macro does, and they do specify exactly what the object they mark is supposed to be. The markup is designed to look like content markup, marking objects as a poem title, as a stanza, as a line, and so on. `poemscol` gives all of these content terms typographical meaning.

There are also many commands for special purposes whose necessity may not seem clear until the editor finds him or herself in the jam the command was designed for. For instance, `poemscol` normally encourages a page break before the title of a poem, or before the title of a section of a poetic sequence, to discourage page breaks between the title and the poem. But for the first section of a poetic sequence, or the first section of a poem in sections, one does not want to encourage L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to break the page before the section title, since that would leave the title of the sequence or the title of the larger poem as an orphan on the previous page. `\sequencefirstsectiontitle` and its siblings are designed for this situation. Although all commands like `\sequencefirstsectiontitle` discourage page breaks before the title (and all of the commands discourage page breaks after the title), widowed or orphaned titles, and widowed or orphaned first lines will still sometimes happen, particularly if you have a multi-line sequence title followed by a multi-line section title. For these cases, a page break at some other suitable

point will have to be explicitly issued to move widowed or orphaned lines to better places.

### 3.1 The title of the poem

`\poemtitle` `\poemtitle{}`, as its name implies, sets the title of the poem. The macro takes one argument — the title, of course. The macro typesets the title in the body of the volume (testing first to see whether there is enough space at the bottom of the page to get the title and a couple of lines of the poem in), typesets the title in the table of contents (with the page number), typesets the title in the textual notes (adding the page number, and checking to see whether there is room enough on the page), and prepares similar entries in the lists of emendations and in the explanatory notes (if you need them) as well as in the endnote sections for any species of endnote you have defined for yourself. `poemscol` gives default values for such things as the font size, the separation between the top of the title and the bottom of the previous poem, the separation between the bottom of the title and the first line, and so on. It also sets penalties in order to encourage page breaks just before a title, and to discourage page breaks between a title and a poem.

You can change all these values in your header file by changing the value of the parameters listed below in the implementation section using either `\setlength` or `\renewcommand` (depending upon what you are changing). `\poemtitlefont` globally sets the font size (and leading) for all poem titles in the main text. `\contentspoemtitlefont` globally sets the font size (and leading) for poem titles in the table of contents. `\afterpoemtitleskip` sets the vertical separation between a poem and its title. `\afterpoemskip` sets the vertical separation between the end of a poem and the title of the next poem. `\poemtitlepenalty` encourages but does not require a page break just before a poem title. If you don't want the entry in the notes section for this poem to include the page number of the poem, issue `\putpagenumberinnotesfalse`. A complete list of all of the special commands for setting font sizes, skips, and penalties, is in section 13.1, page 39, below.

Multiple line titles (if it matters how they are broken up on page), titles of subsections of poems, titles of sequences of poems, and titles of the elements of a sequence of poems are all special cases, with special commands, which will be dealt with below at sections 12.5 and 12.7. You can also create new varieties of title. For instructions on how to do this, see section 12.11 below, page 37.

`\poemsubtitle` Subtitles of poems should be issued as the arguments to the `\poemsubtitle{}` macro.

`\titleindent` For indented parts of titles. In the macros for setting the sections and subsections of poetic sequences, `poemscol` uses `\titleindent` internally to set up a hierarchy of indentations. (A section of a sequence is indented one `\titleindent`. A subsection is indented two. And so on.) `\titleindent` is also used internally in the commands for multiple line titles. Instructions about changing the value of `\titleindent` can be found in section 13.1.

### 3.2 The body of the poem

**poem** The body of every poem should be placed in a **poem** environment. Putting the body of the poem between `\begin{poem}` and `\end{poem}` resets the line counter to 1, and puts the poem in a **verse** environment (to handle run over lines automatically). **poemscol** slightly modifies the **verse** environment from the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X definition, increasing the indentation used for run over lines, in order to make the difference between the indented run over portion of a long line, on one hand, and an explicitly indented second line, on the other, more obvious in the output. **poemscol** also adds a little bit more white space between stanzas than the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X **verse** environment does. (I found that the standard stanza breaks did not leap out on the page as stanza breaks.) The verse environment for **poemscol** is **pmclverse**, defined below on page 60. If you want to change any of these things consult the definition of the stanza environment below at page 69.

**\versewidth** The **poem** environment takes an optional argument. If your poem has short lines, and you wish to center it on the page, rather than set it against the left margin of the normal **poem** environment, you can give the width of the line you want to use to center the poem as the argument. Alternatively, the length **\versewidth** can be used as the argument. You can set the length of **\versewidth** to the proper amount using **\settowidth** as follows: `\settowidth{\versewidth}{Text of line to use for centering}`. To use **\versewidth** to center the poem on a sample line, enter the **poem** environment this way: `\begin{poem}[\versewidth]`.

**\linenumberscenteredwithverse** If you center the verse on the page using this option, you probably also want to move the line numbers in, so as to be closer to the line. **poemscol** will do this by default. If you wish to leave the line numbers at the margin, set the boolean **\linenumberscenteredwithverse** to false. For centered verse, the distance between the line numbers and the verse can be set by setting the length of **\marginparsepmin** (not **\marginparsep**). The default value of **\marginparsepmin** is 2em.

**\centertitles** If you center the poem on a sample line, you probably also want to center the title of the poem too, which you can do by issuing **\centertitles**.

**iftextcenteringturnedon** Suppose you have marked up poems with the optional second argument to `\begin{poem}` which would cause the text block to be centered on the longest line. You can turn off centering, without erasing all of the second arguments, by issuing **\textcenteringturnedonfalse**. You can turn on centering the text block again by issuing **\textcenteringturnedontrue**.

**poemscol** turns off automatic hyphenation in poetry environments. The idea here is that every hyphen in the printed poem is authorial, obviating the need for you to compile a hyphenated-lines list to distinguish between authorial hyphens and hyphens you added for lineation purposes. Line-ending hyphens should not be a feature of verse anyway, I think. (You may wish to change this for your own edition, in order to improve its look; but if you do so you must keep track of added hyphens yourself. This list will be easy to compile, however, because only authorial hyphens will appear in your source code. Automatically added hyphens will appear only in the output. You might even modify the output routine so that

automatically added hyphens have a different look. That would be non-trivial, but Donald Knuth has an exercise about doing just that in *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*.) `poemscol` turns automatic hyphenation back on in prose contexts, so if you wish to keep a hyphenation list for such things as authorial prefaces and so on, you must do so yourself manually. (Alternatively, you can turn automatic hyphenation off in those contexts as well, by setting the `\language` to 255. For an example of how to do this, look at the definition of the `\poem` environment in the implementation section below. If you do turn automatic hyphenation off, it would be wise to restrict the change to some particular environment, rather than changing the `\language` globally. You might wish, for instance, to turn automatic hyphenation off in the `\prosesection` environment.)

**stanza** Every stanza should be placed in its own stanza environment. Every poem should have at least one stanza. Marking the beginning and end of every stanza (with `\begin{stanza}` and `\end{stanza}`) provides `poemscol` with a way of detecting cases in which a page boundary falls on a stanza break, since in those cases a page turn happens when one is *inside* a poem environment but *not* inside a stanza environment. Further, marking the beginning and end of every stanza makes the logical structure of the poem (and the editor’s intentions about it) clear to readers of your source code.

`\stanzaatbottom` If you wish to change the symbol used to mark cases in which a break falls on a page turn, issue the command `\stanzaatbottom{}`, using as the argument whatever you wish to use to mark such cases. The default is `*`, which is suitable for a published volume. If you are preparing a typescript for submission, you may wish to set `\stanzaatbottom` to “stanza break.”

`\nostanzaatbottom` If you wish also to mark all cases where there is NOT a stanza break at the bottom of the page, issue the command `\nostanzaatbottom{}`, using as the argument whatever you wish to mark such cases. The default is `\relax` (which is to say, “don’t do anything”).

**\verseline** `\verseline` should mark the end of every line, except the last line of every stanza (which should be marked with `\end{stanza}`). `\verseline` marks the end of every line as a prosodic unit (since a line of verse is not simply a carriage return), and advances the line counter. There are commands below for changing the line counter’s horizontal placement (how close it is to the left or right margin of the line) and appearance. (See section 21.10 for these.)

`\setverselinemodulo` `\setverselinemodulo` sets how often a marginal line number appears. To print a line number every five lines, issue `\setverselinemodulo{5}`. The default value is 10.

`\makeverselinenumbers` Marginal verse line numbering is on by default. To turn line numbering off, issue `\global\verselinenumbersfalse`. To turn it back on, issue `\makeverselinenumbers`.

`\verselinenumberstoright` To put all of the line numbers to the left, issue `\verselinenumberstoleft` in your preamble. `\verselinenumberstoright` puts the line numbers in the right margin. (These two commands use non-floating marginal note macros derived from the memoir class, `\pmcleftsidepar` and `\pmcrightsidepar`, respectively.) If you wish them to appear in the outer margins, issue `\verselinenumbersouter` in your preamble. If you want the line numbers to appear in the inner margins,

issue `\verselinenumbersgutter` in your preamble. (These two commands use `\pmclsidepar`, derived from `\sidepar` from the `memoir` class, but modified by Dan Leucking.) You can adjust the distance between the marginal line number and the text with `\setlength{\marginparsep}{}`. The default value for `\marginparsep` is 18pt, and the default value for the width of the box in which the line numbers are set, `\marginparwidth`, is 18 pt. If you are setting with the line numbers to the right, `\marginparwidth` can be as small as you wish, although your log file will be full of complaints if you make it too small. But if you are setting with the line numbers to the left, if `\marginparwidth` is narrower than the width of the line number, the line number will be moved down a line. Setting `\marginparsep` to zero lines the verse line numbers up with the page numbers, and puts both at the margin. If you move the verse line numbers by changing `\marginparsep`, you can move the page numbers to keep them aligned by changing `\headoffsetlength` to the same value.

The line numbers should print on the baseline. You can adjust them to move them up or down by changing the value of a length called `\pmclsideparvshift`. The default value is `\setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{0ex}`.

`\versemarginadjust`

You can adjust the placement of the verse block by changing the value of the length `\versemarginadjust`. For most commonly used type sizes, setting `\versemarginadjust` to 28pts will put the verse block at the left margin.

### 3.3 Special line markup

`\linebend`

`poemscol` automatically runs over long lines, indenting the run over portion on the next physical line. If you are unhappy with where `poemscol` has run over a particular line, you can “bend” that line by issuing `\linebend` at the point where you wish it to run over. The run over portion of the line will be indented just as if `poemscol` had “bent” the line at your selected point. This command only works if you have chosen to bend the line at some point earlier than `poemscol` would have chosen on its own. If you really do want to extend a line further into the right margin, you can probably do so by using a combination of `\nobreak` and `\hbox{}`, or by turning all of the spaces in that line into unbreakable spaces, marked with `~` in your source. But `poemscol` will complain if you do this, and rightly so, since the result is likely to be ugly.

You may also wish to use `\linebend` to reproduce how your author broke up long lines on the page (if you know that your author cared about such things and did not leave them up to the typesetter).

`\linebend` should only be used for managing run over lines, not for cases in which a line is to be broken into separate half-lines. For cases in which a line is to be broken into half-lines, use the `\brokenline` macro. The two macros do similar (but not identical) things. But a “linebend” is a feature of typesetting, and a “broken line” is a feature of versification, and it seems best to distinguish them logically. (`\linebend`, like `\brokenline`, issues a carriage return without incrementing the line number, but `\linebend` adds indentation to the next line.)

`\runoverindent`

To change the indentation for the run over portion of verse lines globally, issue the amount of indentation as the argument to `\runoverindent{}`.

`\runoverindent{}` is currently set to 6 em, rather more than the standard amount in the definition of the `LATEX` `verse` environment. By default, the runover portion of long lines is indented. You may wish to flush the runover portion to the right margin instead. For instructions about how to do this, see section 3.3, page 15.

`\verseindent` The `\verseindent` command is to be used for formally indented lines. It should not be used to indent the run over portion of long lines (which `poemscot` handles automatically anyway). `\verseindent` indents the line a bit less than the run over portion of long “bent” lines are indented, so that the two cases can be visually distinguished. By default, the length of `\verseindent` is 2 em. To change it, say to 3 em, issue `\renewcommand{\verseindent}{\hspace{3em}}`

`\brokenline` should be used where you wish to break the line without incrementing the line counter. Authors often break a line into two half-lines, setting the beginning of the second half-line flush with the end of the first half-line. (Sometimes these broken lines indicate a change of speaker. Sometimes they just indicate a change of subject, usually an abrupt one, a change which calls attention to itself by interrupting a line rather than waiting for a line break or stanza break). `\brokenline` is normally used with `\versephantom{}`, which adds white space exactly as long as its argument would have been had it been set in type. `\versephantom{}` thus provides an easy way of setting the beginning of the second half-line flush with the end of the first, whatever the font size or special formatting of the first line.

The sestet of Yeats's sonnet "Leda and the Swan," has such a broken line:

A shudder in the loins engenders there  
The broken wall, the burning roof and tower  
And Agamemnon dead.  
Being so caught up,  
So mastered by the brute blood of the air,  
Did she put on his knowledge with his power  
Before the indifferent beak could let her drop?

To set the broken line properly, issue:

And Agamemnon dead.\brokenline  
\versephantom{And Agamemnon dead.} Being so caught up,\verseline

`\tweakbrokenline` By default, `poemscol` sets the line numbers level with the ends of broken lines. If the line numbers are set to the right of the text, this seems the obvious choice. Conceivably you might want to set the line number level with the beginning of a broken line when the line numbers are set to the left. To ensure that the line numbers of broken lines are set level with the beginning of a broken line when the line number is on the left, issue `\tweakbrokenline` in your preamble.

You should issue `\tweakbrokenline` with caution, because although it changes how `\brokenline` is handled, it does not change the handling of long lines with runover. Runover lines will still set the line number level with the end of the line. You can have runover lines set their line number level with the beginning of the line by issuing `\startverseline` at the beginning of the line.

<code>\brokenlineatbeginning</code>	Conceivably you might want <code>\brokenline</code> to set the line number level with the beginning of the line in every case. To do this, issue <code>\brokenlineatbeginning</code> in your preamble. If you do this, you should be prepared to mark the beginning of runover lines with <code>\startverseline</code> .
<code>\startverseline</code>	If you begin a verse line with <code>\startverseline</code> the line number will be set level with the beginning of the line rather than with the end. This is useful, for instance, if you want to ensure that the line number of a line with runover is set level with the beginning of the line. You can, if you don't want to keep track of where runover lines are, start every line with <code>\startverseline</code> .
<code>\tweakstartverseline</code>	Rather than setting the line number of every runover line level with the beginning of the line, it may make more sense for you to set the line number level with the beginning in cases where the line number is to the left, and level with the end in cases where the line number is to the right. You might want to do this, for instance, if you have decided to set all the verse lines at the outer margin (by issuing <code>\verselinenumbersouter</code> in your preamble), or have decided to set all the verse lines at the inner margin (by issuing <code>\verselinenumbersgutter</code> in your preamble). To ensure that <code>\startverseline</code> does this, issue <code>\tweakstartverseline</code> in your preamble.
<code>\stanzalinestraddle</code>	Some poets (such as Robert Penn Warren) occasionally introduce a stanza break in the middle of a broken line, considering the line to be a single metrical unit despite the fact that it straddles a stanza break. To record these cases, mark the end of the first half-line with <code>\end{stanza}</code> as usual. But instead of opening the next stanza with <code>\begin{stanza}</code> issue <code>\stanzalinestraddle</code> instead. This will make sure that the line counter counts the straddling line as only one line, despite the stanza break. <code>\stanzalinestraddle</code> is usually used with <code>\versephantom{}</code> .
<code>rightflushverse</code> <code>\rightversebegin</code>	By default, <code>poemscol</code> indents the runover portion of long lines by the amount <code>\runoverindent</code> (by default 6 em). It is possible to set verse so that the runover portion is flushed to the right margin. To do this, you should put the <code>\rightflushverse</code> environment inside the <code>\poem</code> environment. And you must mark the beginning of each verse line with <code>\rightversebegin</code> . Christian Ebert has reminded me that the <code>\rightflushverse</code> environment must be issued <i>inside</i> the poem environment. Otherwise it simply flushes every line to the right.  It is rather clumsy to need a special environment for verse with right flushed runover. I plan to provide a command for switching between a verse environment that indents runover lines and a verse environment that flushes runover lines to the right. I have seen examples of this kind of environment from Markus Kohm and Christian Ebert, but so far I haven't been able to persuade them to play well with <code>poemscol</code> .
<code>\poemlinelabel</code>	<code>\poemlinelabel{}</code> enables crossreferences by line number. To make a line label, issue <code>\poemlinelabel{text of label}</code> right after the line to which you wish to refer, where "text of label" is some distinctive label you can use for a reference elsewhere. (You should issue the command <i>after</i> the <code>\verseline</code> or <code>\end{stanza}</code> command, to make sure that the line number will be correct.) To produce the reference, just issue <code>\ref{text of label}</code> as usual. ( <code>\poemlinelabel</code> is just a crudely hacked version of <code>\label</code> from L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X.) <code>\pageref{text of label}</code> will set the page number of the page on which the label appears.

## 4 Making a table of contents

### 4.1 Setup

`\makepoemcontents` I found the normal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macros for making tables of contents for scholarly works unsuited for making tables of contents of poetry, so I have provided my own. To make a table of contents for your poems, issue `\makepoemcontents`. It might seem as though you would want to issue this command in your preamble. In fact it is better to issue it in the body of the document, immediately *after* issuing the `\putpoemcontents`, the command which inputs and typesets a table of contents from a prior run. If you issue `\makepoemcontents` before issuing `\putpoemcontents`, you will simply erase the table of contents from the prior run (the one which will have all the contents information you are intending to use) and enter an empty table of contents into your document. Information for your table of contents will be written to an external file with the extension `.ctn`. `\makepoemcontents` creates this file, and opens an output channel to send information to it. `\putpoemcontents` closes the file and reads it into your document. You will need to run your book through  $\text{\LaTeX}$  twice in order to generate a table of contents, the first time to generate the titles and the references for the page numbers, and the second time to use the labels to which the references point to enter the page numbers. (Under some circumstances — if you have an index, for instance — you may need three passes rather than two.)

`\makepoemcontents` takes an optional argument, which sets the page number for the table of contents. If your publisher wishes to add some front matter so that the contents will appear on page vii, you should issue `\makepoemcontents{7}`.

All of the commands that generate lines in the table of contents are somewhat messy and somewhat rigid, but you can modify them if you wish. Lines in the table of contents usually include an indent (how much of one depends upon what the entry is — whether it is a volume title, a poem title, or something else), then the title itself. If the entry is for a poem, for a section of a poem, or for a section of a poetic sequence, a slash follows the title, followed by the page number. To change the appearance of a *particular* kind of entry (for all sequences of poems, for instance), go to the definition of the title of that kind of entry (e.g. `\sequencetitle`) below, find the line where it calls the `\c@ntentsinfo` macro, and change the arguments to that macro to suit you. If you wish to give *all* your entries a different look altogether, modify the `\c@ntentsinfo` macro below (see section 21.13.1, page 85).

`\setcontentsleaders` By default the title and the page are separated by a slash (actually by `~/~`). If you wish to change this, say to put dot leaders in instead, issue what you wish to use as the argument to `\setcontentsleaders`, as for instance `\setcontentsleaders{\poemdotfill}`, which will flush the number to the right margin, and insert leading dots up to the number. The argument to `\setcontentsleaders` can be whatever you wish to use to separate the title from the page number, such as a colon, a hard space (`~`), or even `\hfil` to flush the page number to the left margin.

`\putpoemcontents` `\putpoemcontents` will input the table of contents file if it exists, and complain



on your log file if it does not. Because the table of contents uses a special page style and special fonts `\putpoemcontents` restores the default fancy page style once it has input the contents, and restores `\normalfont` as well.

Be sure to reset the style of page numbering (from `\pagenumbering{roman}` to `\pagenumbering{arabic}`) after issuing `\putpoemcontents`, since when you read in the external file created by `\makepoemcontents` the page numbering will be set to roman numerals. The command `\resetpagestyle` (which is called by `\putpoemcontents`) will reset the fancy page style to that used in the main body of the volume, but it won't change the page numbering to arabic, in case there is some frontmatter between the contents and the main text, so you should be sure to do so yourself. If you neglect to issue `\pagenumbering{arabic}` before you begin to get to your poems your page numbering will remain in roman numerals. The notes sections use the page numbers from the poem to construct running headers of the form "Notes to pp. xx–yy." If those numbers are roman numerals rather than arabic ones, `poemscot` will not recognize them as numbers, and you will get the infamous "Missing Number" error that puzzles so many users of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

## 4.2 Contents entries for notes sections and the index

`\puttextnotes` `\puttextnotes`, and its siblings `\putemendations` and `\putexplanatory`, input the formatted endnotes sections into your document, and put entries for them into your table of contents. You will have to run L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X again to set the page numbers of those sections in the table of contents properly. The first run sets the title of the endnotes section and a label to find the page number to add to the table of contents, and the second run actually sets page number. (These commands are described below, in section 11.) All of these commands also restore normal hyphenation for the endnotes sections.

`\putpoemindex` `\putpoemindex` inputs the formatted index (after your raw entries have been processed by `MakeIndex`), and adds an entry for it into the table of contents. Remember that if you are making an index of titles and first lines you may need to run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X twice more after running `MakeIndex`, to put the entry for the index and its correct page number into your table of contents.

`\putmultiplepoemindex` Use `\putmultiplepoemindex` instead if you are making several indices. For instructions about `\putmultiplepoemindex` see section 5.2, p. 18.

`\finish` Rather than issuing `\putpoemcontents` in the proper place, and `\puttextnotes` and its siblings in their proper places, you can issue the `\finish` command just after your last poem. `\finish` turns automatic hyphenation back on, closes and reads back in the external files for the emendations, the textual collations, and the explanatory notes, sets the index of first lines and titles, puts the information about these sections in the table of contents, closes the external file for the contents, and reads it back in. One disadvantage of this method is that you print the book with the contents at the end, so when you print it you must retrieve the contents pages and put them in the proper place. I found the convenience worth the hassle, but you might not. This command is deprecated now. But I have retained it, since the few users who gave me their opinions of the matter told me that they preferred to use `\finish` than `\puttextnotes`.

## 5 Making an index of titles and first lines

### 5.1 Setup

`\indexingontrue` To set up the Index section of your volume, issue `\indexingontrue` in your preamble. This will create the external file for your index information and send that file the typesetting information for its title. You must process this external file (the .idx file) with MakeIndex to create a properly organized and formatted index. MakeIndex sorts the various multi-level “index cards” generated by all of the `\index` commands in your source files.

`\putpoemindex` Once you have processed your .idx file with MakeIndex, and generated the sorted and formatted .ind file for your book, the `\putpoemindex` command will insert the typeset index where you issue it, and put an entry for your index in your table of contents. You will have to run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X twice again to make the page number for that entry correct.

`poemscol` sets up a two-column index with a simple running header. (Setting up a two-column index, however, requires that you include the `multicol` package in your `\usepackage{}` list.) To turn indexing off, issue `\global\indexingonfalse`.

Enter the individual index entries in the poems as you normally would for use by MakeIndex (say, after each title and first line). One of the nice features of MakeIndex is that every entry has two parts, one for specifying the sort key of the entry (or subentry), the other for specifying the font and typesetting information of the entry (or subentry). This enables you to drop all of the initial uses of “the” in titles for sorting purposes, while still including the “the” in the title. It also enables you to distinguish titles from first lines (by italicizing them), and to include typesetting information (such as italicization) in titles or first lines without messing up their sort order.

### 5.2 Making multiple indices

`poemscol` can work with `splitindex` to generate more than one index. You might, for instance, wish a separate index of titles and index of first lines, or an index of proper names. To do this, call `splitindex` in your list of packages. Then, in your preamble, declare the indices you are planning to use, e.g. `\newindex[Index of Titles]{idx}` `\newindex[Index of First Lines]{fir}` `\newindex[Onomastic Index]{ono}`. The second argument is the “shortcut” defined by `splitindex`, and will be used to mark index entries in your text (see below), and as the extension for the external index files used by MakeIndex.

Then mark up individual entries. Some entries (in the example above, the “Index of Titles” examples) can be marked up with `\index` just as if you were using only one index. Entries for other indices should be marked using the `\sindex` command from `splitindex`, as follows

```
\sindex[fir]{Of Man's first disobedience and the fruit}
```

where the first argument is the “shortcut” and the second is the index entry. If you are loading `splitindex` with the `split` option, the different types of index entry will

be sent to separate output streams, which each must be processed separately with MakeIndex. T<sub>E</sub>X has only a limited number of such output streams, however, so it is probably wiser not to choose that option, but to use `splitindex.tex`, `splitindex.pl`, or one of the other means provided with the `splitindex` package to break up the index into the separate parts, each of which must be processed with MakeIndex separately.

To include the indices, and to add entries for them to the table of contents, issue `\putmultiplepoemindex` for each one. `\putmultiplepoemindex` takes four arguments, which are: 1. The three letter “shortcut” used by `\splitindex`, 2. The title of the Index on its first page, 3. The running header for that index section, and 4. The name of the section as you wish it to appear in the Table of Contents. So, for instance

```
\putmultiplepoemindex{fir}{INDEX OF FIRST LINES}{Index of First
Lines}{First Line Index}
```

includes an index with shortcut “fir,” title “INDEX OF FIRST LINES,” running header “Index of First Lines,” and contents entry “First Line Index.”

## 6 Collections with multiple volumes

`volumetitlepage` The `volumetitlepage` environment is an environment for divider pages in collections made up of several volumes. Volume title pages will always appear on recto pages with blank verso pages. `poemscol` will also automatically create a blank verso page preceding the volume title page if it necessary. The `maintitlepage` environment is for the title page of the whole book. The main title page will also automatically always be on a recto page. These divider pages have special page styles, with no page numbers and no running headers.

`\wholebooktitle` `\wholebooktitle{}` is for the title of the entire collection. `\volumetitle{}` is for the title of an individual volume within a Collected Poems. The `\volumetitlefirstline{}`, `\volumetitlemiddleline{}`, and `\volumetitlelastline{}` macros are for multi-line titles of volumes gathered into the collection. (Use these last commands if you want to specify how a long title is broken up both in the text and in the table of contents. `poemscol` will break up long titles on its own anyway if you don’t specify how to break them up, but you might not be happy with how it breaks up the lines.) `\volumesubtitle{}` is for setting the subtitle to a volume. `\volumesectiontitle{}` is for setting the title of a section of a volume. In addition to setting the text in the body of your edition, these commands send the title (and the formatting information about it) to the table of contents file and to the various endnotes files.

`\volumeepigraph` `\volumeepigraph{}` and `\volumeattribution{}` are for epigraphs and attributions on the divider pages. `\volumeheader{}` or `\righthead` is the right running header for that volume (except for divider pages, the table of contents, the notes sections, and other special cases). Normally that is just the name of the particular volume. `\lefthead` is the left running header for the entire

book (except for divider pages, the table of contents, the notes sections, and other special cases). Normally that is the name of the entire book.

## 7 Recording textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes

### 7.1 Setup for endnote sections

`\makeemendations` To collect emendations, issue `\makeemendations` in your preamble. To collect textual collations, issue `\maketextnotes` in your preamble. To collect explanatory notes, issue `\makeexplanatorynotes` in your preamble. If you issue these commands, `poemscol` puts all of the emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes in the backmatter of your volume. `poemscol` opens external files for emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes (with extensions `.emd`, `.ent`, and `.enx` respectively), and reads them back in at the place you specify with `\puttextnotes`, `\putexplanatory`, or `\putemendations`, or at the end (if you use the `\finish` command). These commands also send to the external files the commands for typesetting the title of each section (e.g. Explanatory Notes), for making an entry in the table of contents for each endnote section, and for modifying the running headers of the notes sections to `xx-yy` format (e.g. “Explanatory Notes to pp. 55–7”).

If you wish to use multi-layer footnotes rather than endnotes, you do not need to issue `\maketextnotes` or its relatives (but you should of course issue `\textnotesatfoot` or its relatives). You can mix footnotes or endnotes as you wish. You may, for instance, wish to set explanatory notes as footnotes, and textual notes and emendations as endnotes. Instructions for setting up `poemscol` to make such footnotes are in section 9 below.

In end note sections `poemscol` opens an entry (headed with the title and page of the poem in the text) in the textual notes section for every poem (since, minimally, you want to include information about the variants and copy text of the poem), but only opens entries in the emendations or explanatory notes sections (or any other endnote sections you may create) if you actually have emendations or explanatory notes on that poem.

The notes for each poem are set in a block paragraph, with a new paragraph for every `\poemtitle` command, and the line counter for the notes is reset to 1 with every `\begin{poem}`. (For long poems in books or cantos, it you might use `\poemtitle` for the canto names or numbers, or perhaps you might want to design a new species of title using the commands described below at section 12.11, page 37.)

By default, there is one paragraph per poem, with a hanging indent to give prominence to the page number.

`\iftextnotessinglepar` You may, particularly if you are annotating long poems, wish each note to appear in its own paragraph rather than in a block paragraph with the other notes to that poem. To do this, you need to set the relevant boolean. Issue `\textnotessinglepartrue` `\emendationssinglepartrue` or `\ifexplanationssinglepar`

`\explanationssinglepartrue` to give each such note a separate paragraph. (Similar booleans will be automatically defined for any species of endnote you create.) By default, these notes will have a hanging indent, to give prominence to the line number.

You may have notes with multiple paragraphs. The default settings for all of the forms of endnotes are set with hanging indentation, which probably is not a good idea for multiple paragraph notes. There are two ways of approaching this problem. The first way is to change all of the paragraphs of the notes to normal indentation, which you can do by issuing `\literaltextnote{\setlength{\parindent}{\noteindentation}}` just after issuing `\maketextnotes`. You can change the amount of indentation by changing the value of the length `\noteindentation` (the default value is 1 em). You should remember to issue similar commands for emendations, explanatory notes, and whatever kinds of notes you create using `\definewnewnotetype`.

`\noteparbreak` Alternatively, if you want to keep the hanging indent for the page number, but still have paragraph breaks in the note, issue `\noteparbreak` whenever you want a paragraph break in the midst of a note. By default, `\noteparbreak` indents the new paragraph 1em. You can change this by changing the value of the length `\noteindentation`.

`\iftextnotestwocol` By default, notes are set in single columns. To set them in two column mode, `\ifemendationstwocol` set the relevant booleans to true, e.g. `\textnotestwocoltrue`. Again, any note `\ifexplanationstwocol` type you create with `\definewnewnotetype` will automatically define the “twocol” boolean that goes with it.

`\putpagenumberinnotesfalse` You may not wish to have the poem’s page number and title appear in the notes. To turn off the appearance of the page number in the notes, issue `\putpagenumberinnotesfalse`. You may also not wish to put the poem’s title in the notes. To turn off the appearance of the poem’s title in the notes, issue `\puttitleinnotesfalse`.

`\contentsendnotesindent` You can control the appearance of the entry for endnote sections in the table of contents by changing the definition of `\contentsendnotesindent` (set by default to `\contentsindentone`) or `\contentsendnotesfont` (set by default to `\contentspoemtitlefont`.)

## 7.2 Textual notes of various kinds

`\sources` To record information about the copy text, editions and publication history of individual poems, or any information not tied to specific lines in the poem, you should place that information in the argument to the `\sources{}` macro. Typically, you should issue this macro after you have issued `\poemtitle{}` and before you issue `\begin{poem}`. If you wish to send information to the textual notes file (such as to force a page break), you can do so by using `\sources{}`. You can send typesetting information to other sections by using `\literalemend{}`, `\literalexplain{}`, or `\literalcontents{}`. There is also a `\literaltextnote{}` command, which is equivalent to `\sources{}`. Although they do the same thing, I use `\sources{}` to send editorial information to the textual note section, but use `\literaltextnote{}` to send formatting instructions to the textual note section.

`\textnote`      `\textnote{}` is used to capture variants and tie them to the correct line number. You don't have to count line numbers; `poemscol` keeps track of them for you.

`\emendation`    Issue `\textnote{}` immediately after the `\verseline` command which marks the ending of the line you wish to comment upon. Put the text of your note (which may be simply the recording of a variant in standard notation) into the argument of the macro. You should put both the lemma and the variants or comment in the argument to the `\textnote{}` macro. For emendations, use `\emendation{}`, and for explanatory notes, use `\explanatory{}`. These notes go to their own endnote sections. The only difference is that each poem opens a new paragraph for its own textual notes, but paragraphs for explanatory notes or emendations are only opened if there actually are explanatory notes or emendations for that poem.

`\sameword`      To put the  $\sim$  glyph in your note (used for recording places where the variant and the copy text have the same word, as for instance when recording a variation of punctuation) use `\sameword`. To put the  $\wedge$  glyph into your text (used for recording places where a punctuation mark is missing in a variant), use `\missingpunct`.

For notes that refer to ranges of lines, `\textnote`, `\emendation`, and `\explanatory` have an optional argument, which records how many lines the note refers to. There are two ways of using this argument. The grubby but simple way is simply to put into the argument the number of lines it refers to. If, for instance, you issue `\textnote[4]{lemma rest of note}`, `poemscol`, rather than printing merely the number of the line which closed just before you issued `\textnote`, will print a line range, beginning at that line, and ending at the fourth line after it. If that `\textnote` were issued after line 214, this is to say, the output in the textual notes would be: 214–218: lemma] rest of note.

It seems clumsy to count the lines referred to by a note, especially since you don't have to count lines to set where the note begins. A more sophisticated way, and one which involves no counting, is to make a unique poem line label for the last line of the range by issuing `\poemlinelabel{some unique label}` just after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` that ends the range. (To use `\poemlinelabel` see section 3.3.) Then, back after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` command that closes the first line of the range, put the text of the label into the optional argument of `\textnote` as follows: `\textnote[some unique label]{lemma rest of note}`. This is the preferred method. The line-counting method is deprecated, but retained for backwards compatibility with earlier versions. If you use the label method, you will have to run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X twice, once to define the labels, and once to set the text.

Here is a complete example:

```
Yes, then I met the beast. Well, better, indeed,\verseline
\textnote[had it been the]{better, indeed, / Had it been the] better if
it / Had been the 1953TS (revised in black pencil
on 1953TS to 1953)}
Had it been the manifest beast and the circumstantial\verseline
\poemlinelabel{had it been the}
Avatar of destruction. But no beast then: the towering\verseline
Definition, angelic, arrogant, abstract,\verseline
```

```
Greaved in glory, thewed with light, the bright\verseline
Brow tall as dawn. I could not see the eyes.\end{stanza}
```

Overlapping lemmas, or lemmas that include stanza breaks, do not pose any difficulties for `poemscol`.

`\emendation{}` and `\explanatory{}` are used exactly as `\textnote{}` is. Issue the emendation or the explanatory note as the argument to the command. Place the command immediately after the `\verseline` that concludes the line to which it is a comment. These commands also can take optional arguments to specify line ranges.

If you quote verse *within* a textual note, an explanatory note, or an emendation, you may want to use the normal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X markup for verse for that quotation, rather than the special markup for `poemscol`. `poemscol` will not complain about this.

`\quotedversecorrectiontextnote` If a textual note *ends* with a quotation in verse, you should follow the `\textnote{}` entry with `\quotedversecorrectiontextnote`. I found that if I quoted verse in the note sections a dirty trick I used to send the notes to the external files would cause the following notes on that poem in the notes sections to be set in a new paragraph. (This is of course not a problem if the quoted verse is the last thing in the notes to that poem, since the next poem will open a new paragraph in the notes anyway. It is also not a problem if more of the individual `textnote` follows the verse. It's only a problem if the last thing in the note is quoted verse, and the note is not the last one on that poem.) The command should set it flush as it is, but I have found odd cases I can't understand in which that doesn't work, so the command has an optional argument, which should be the additional length you need to adjust the next line by to make it flush. The default is 0pt. `\quotedversecorrectionexplanatory` and `\quotedversecorrectionemendation` should follow explanatory notes or emendations that end with snippets of verse. These three commands are an embarrassing kludge on my part. They simply send commands to the relevant note sections that prohibit opening a new paragraph. You should issue this command in the main text right after the close of the `textnote` (not in the text of the `textnote` itself).

`\accidental` `\accidental{}` behaves exactly like `\textnote{}`. If you wish to distinguish between accidentals and substantives, this command provides a way of doing so. If you wish to exclude accidentals from your textual notes, issue `\global\includeaccidentalsfalse` in your preamble. Accidentals are included by default, but if you issue `\includeaccidentalstrue` in your preamble, you will remind yourself of that fact.

`poemscol` does not provide for a separate backmatter section for accidentals, but it would be trivial to construct one, using `\definewnewnotetype`, described in section 8 below. Use `\definewnewnotetype` to create a command called `\newaccidental`, then issue `\let\accidental=\newaccidental`.

If you wish to exclude accidentals from your printed output, but to mark them in your source files, so that your published collation consists only of substantives, issue `\global\includeaccidentalsfalse` in your preamble. Many publishers are

reluctant to publish accidentals, believing that they are, well, less substantive than substantives. Using the `\accidental{}` command allows you to exclude accidentals from the published version should your publisher insist, while preserving the information about them should the publisher's mind change. In the very worst case, if you have marked all the accidentals in this way you can still produce a list of accidentals for later use, and other scholars can search for accidentals in your source files simply by searching for the string `\accidental`.

`\tsvariant`  
`\tsentry` Some publishers may turn up their noses at typescript or manuscript variants in just the way they turn up their noses at accidentals. If you wish to distinguish between published variants and typescript, manuscript, or galley variants, `\tsvariant` (for a whole note) and `\tsentry` (for a typescript entry in a list of variants in a textual note that includes other kinds of variant) provide ways of doing so. By default, typescript variants are included. To exclude typescript variants, issue `\global\includetypescriptsfalse` in your preamble. You can issue `\global\includetypescriptstrue` in your preamble, to remind yourself that you are including typescript variants. In that (default) case `\tsvariant{}` will behave exactly like `\textnote{}`, and entries in other notes marked with `\tsentry` will be included in your output.

Here is how to use `\tsentry`: if you wish to include typescript entries in a single note including those entries in a list with variants from other published versions (as for instance when a comma appears in a typescript but only in the second edition of the published poem), simply issue `\textnote{}` as usual, marking the relevant variant in the list of variants with the `\tsentry{}` macro. If typescript variants are excluded, the typescript entry will also be excluded.

Here is a typical use of the `\tsentry{}` command:

```
Of moonlit desert. A stallion, white and flashing, slips,\verseline
\textnote{Of moonlit] Of the moonlit {\em NY\}\tsentry{, SP85TS
(revised in black pen to SP85)}}}
```

Notice that since the `\tsentry{}` comes in the middle of the list, it begins with a comma. You might expect an `\unskip` command before the comma, to prevent L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X from adding white space before the comma. `poemscol` automatically provides the `\unskip` if the entry starts with a comma or a semicolon.

You can mark individual variants with `\tsentry{}` in the arguments to the `\explanatory{}` and `\emendation{}` commands as well, and `\tsentry` will also behave normally in any endnote or footnote section you define using `\definewnotetype`.

`poemscol` does not provide for a separate backmatter section for typescript variants, but it would be trivial to construct one, again using `\definewnotetype`. To do this, you would also have to copy all of the emendations, explanatory notes, and textual notes which have a `\tsentry` in their arguments, and add `\tsvariant{}` commands in those places. For information about `\definewnotetype` see section 8.

`\margreftextnote`  
`\margrefexplanatory`  
`\margrefemendation` Some editions include a marginal mark in the text showing where in the apparatus a textual note on that line can be found. `\margreftextnote` sets a label in



the textual notes section, and sets a marginal note with a page reference to that label in the main text. Issue `\margreftextnote` *before* issuing the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` that closes the line to which it refers. (The textual note itself can be an ordinary `\textnote`, and should be placed, as usual, *after* the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}`.) `\margrefexplanatory` does the same thing for explanatory notes, and `\margrefemendation` does the same thing for emendations. If you define a new kind of endnote with `\definewnotetype`, you will automatically also define a new `\margref` command for that kind of note. For details about how these markers work, see section 12.8, page 35.

## 8 Creating new kinds of endnote

`\definewnotetype` The `\definewnotetype` macro can be used to create new kinds of endnote, in case the kinds `poemscol` defined are not enough. `\definewnotetype` takes five arguments. They are

1. A base name used to construct
  - some `\if` variables (e.g. `\ifmynoteson` to see whether you are collecting “mynotes”, `\ifnomynoteyet` to see whether you have written a “mynote” for a particular poem yet, `\ifmynotestwocol` to set the notes in two column mode, and `\ifmynotesinglepar` to set the notes in one paragraph per note form, rather than in block paragraphs). `poemscol` will only open an entry for a poem in the “mynotes” section if there actually is a “mynote” on that poem. Note that every `\if` that refers to a section is plural (`\ifmynoteson`, `\ifmynotestwocol`, `\ifmynotesinglepar`) and that every `\if` that refers to a singular note is singular (`\ifnomynoteyet`).
  - The name for the output channel for writing the notes to the appropriate external file. This name will always be plural.
  - The name for the “literal” command for writing literal, unexpanded text on the file (as `\literaltextnote{}` does on the `textnotes` file), and for the note command that sends the actual textual note (line number and all) to the section (e.g. `\mynote{}`), also the command to write notes in line-numbered prose (e.g. `\prosemynote{ }{ }`) or prose numbered by paragraph and sentence (e.g. `\pmmynote{ }`). These commands will always be singular.
  - The name of the `\put` command (e.g. `\putmynotes`) which closes the external file for the notes section, reads it back in to your document, and adds an entry in the table of contents for that notes section. This command will always be plural.
  - The name of the `\margref` command for putting a marginal mark next to a line giving the page number in the apparatus where a note is to be found (e.g. `\margrefmynote`)

2. The extension for the external file which will hold the notes as you generate them. “Emendations” for instance, are written to an external file called `\jobname.emd`. The file name will always be `\jobname`, and the different species of endnotes will all have distinctive extensions. (`\jobname` is a macro that always expands to the name of your top level source file. If, for instance, I am setting running a file called “myfile.tex” through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `\jobname.emd` translates to “myfile.emd.”)
3. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear in the running header (e.g. “Emendations”).
4. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear on the first page of the notes section (e.g. “EMENDATIONS”).
5. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear in the table of contents.

So, for instance,

```
\definewnotetype{xyznote}{xyz}{Xyznotes to}{XYZNOTES}{Xyznotes}
```

creates the booleans `\ifxyznoteson`, `\ifnoxyznoteyet`, and `\ifxyznotessinglepar`, the commands `\xyznote`, `\literalxyznote`, `\prosexyznote`, `\pmxyznote`, and `\putxyznotes` (and, although you don’t ever have to use it explicitly, `\firstxyznote`) the output channel `xyznotes`, the external file `\jobname.xyz`, an entry in the contents for “Xyznotes”, and an endnotes section with a running header of the form “Xyznotes to pp. xx–yy” and a title XYZNOTES. `\xyznote` takes the same arguments that `\explanatory` does (which is to say, an optional argument for a label for entering line ranges, and an argument for the lemma and the comment). There won’t be an entry for a poem in the “Xyznotes” endnotes section unless there actually is an `xyznote` for the poem. `\prosexyznote` takes the same arguments `\prosexplanatory` does (which is to say, an optional argument for a label for entering line ranges, an argument for a label to capture the line number of the first line, and an argument for the lemma and the comment). `\pmxyznote` behaves exactly like `\pmexplanatory`.

## 9 Multi-level footnotes

`\textnotesatfoot` `poemscol` will set multiple levels of footnotes in block paragraphs, separating each level with a rule. To enable this feature, call the `manyfoot` package as follows in your preamble: `\usepackage[ruled,para*]{manyfoot}`.

To set your textual notes as footnotes, issue `\textnotesatfoot` in your preamble. If you do this, `poemscol` will actually create two sets of footnotes for `textnotes`, one for those that are called with `\textnote`, which will produce an unindented block of notes, and one for those that are called with `\sources`, which will produce individual indented paragraphs, opening a new paragraph with every

note. `\sources` notes often have several paragraphs, so they are inappropriate for block-paragraph or “para” mode, and because those paragraphs are often in fact prose paragraphs, rather than blocks of notations, they are indented, so that they will be read as prose. To set your emendations as footnotes, issue `\emendationsatfoot` in your preamble. These notes will be set by default as block paragraphs. If you have multiple-paragraph notes in your emendations, you should redefine these notes to set plain rather than para style notes. (See the next paragraph for how to do this.) To set your explanatory notes as footnotes, issue `\explanationsatfoot`. These notes will also, by default, be plain style notes, with one indented paragraph per note. You do not need to issue `\maketextnotes`, `\makeemendations` or `\makeexplanatorynotes` if you set those notes as footnotes. If you use `\literaltextnote` anywhere in your file, however, you will lose the text it would have put in your textnotes, since `\literaltextnote` just writes its argument onto the external file for textual notes.

`\iftextfootnotespara`  
`\ifsourcesfootnotespara`  
`\ifemendationfootnotespara`  
`\ifexplanfootnotespara`

To change the style of your footnotes between plain and para modes, globally change the values some of the following booleans. `\ifsourcesfootnotespara`, obviously, is true if footnotes from the `\sources` command are set in “para” mode (default is false). `\iftextfootnotespara` is true if footnotes from `\textnote` are set in “para” mode (default is true). `\ifemendationfootnotespara`, or `\ifexplanfootnotespara` are the booleans which set the style of footnotes from `\emendation` and `\explanatory` respectively. By default, footnotes from `\emendation` are set in “para” mode (`\emendationfootnotesparatrue`), and footnotes from `\explanatory` are set in “plain” mode (`\explanfootnotesparafalse`). To change explanatory footnotes from plain to para mode, for instance, issue `\global\explanfootnotesparatrue`. Counterintuitive as it sounds, you must issue this *before* issuing `\textnotesatfoot` (or the command for whichever other kind of note you are wishing to change the appearance of).

When `\sources` is defined to send endnotes to the textual notes section, they usually appear immediately underneath the title of the volume or poem they comment upon in the endnotes section. If you are having `\sources` output footnotes, it would be a good idea to open the note with the title of the volume or poem it is a comment upon, in case there is more than one poem on the page.

When note classes are set as footnotes, the symbol which marks cases in which a page turn falls on a stanza break will be set *beneath* the footnotes. This is a consequence of the way `poemscol` uses the `\mark` mechanism to keep track of these cases, so I have not figured out how to change it. But it may well be more of an idiosyncrasy than a bug, particularly if the symbol is changed from \* to something like “stanza break at page turn.”

`\DeclareNewFootnote`

To create a new level of footnote, you must first declare it to make it known to `manyfoot`, which requires each level of footnote to be given a unique suffix (usually a capital letter of the alphabet). You can declare a new footnote level called `\footnoteE{}` for instance, by issuing `\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{E}`. You will want notes which don’t put a mark in the body of the text, and begin with the line number or range of line numbers of the lemma. To define a footnote called `\mynote{}`, first declare new footnote `\footnoteE` (A, B, C and D are reserved for

sources, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes, respectively). Then issue:

```
\newcommand{\mynote}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{#1}\
\FootnotetextE{\citerange}{#2}
\resetlemmacounters}
```

`\setlemmarange`, `\citerange`, and `\resetlemmacounters` enable your footnote to handle line ranges in the lemma. If a `\mynote` refers to a range of lines, you can issue the same kinds of optional argument that are used with `\textnote`.

## 10 Notes at the end of poems

<code>\poemendnote</code>	You may wish, rather than using endnotes or footnotes, simply to print your notes
<code>\makepoemendnotes</code>	at the end of each poem. To do this for simple notes, issue <code>\makepoemendnotes</code>
<code>\putpoemendnotes</code>	just after <code>\begin{poem}</code> . Issue <code>\poemendnote</code> where you wish to make a note,
	using the same conventions you use for <code>\textnote</code> . Where you want to output
	the notes, issue <code>\putpoemendnotes</code> . These notes can have multi-line lemmas, just
	like textual notes.
<code>\ifpoemendnotessinglepar</code>	By default, each poem end note is given its own paragraph. To concatenate
	them into one big paragraph, issue <code>\poemendnotessingleparfalse</code> .
<code>\poemendemendationnote</code>	You can print a list of emendations at the end of each poem. To do
<code>\makepoemendemendationnotes</code>	this, issue <code>\makepoemendemendationnotes</code> just after <code>\begin{poem}</code> . Issue
<code>\putpoemendemendationnotes</code>	<code>\poemendemendationnote</code> where you wish to make a note, using the same con-
	ventions you use for <code>\textnote</code> . Where you want to output the notes, issue
	<code>\putpoemendemendationnotes</code> . These notes can have multi-line lemmas, just
	like textual notes.
	By default, each poem end note is given its own paragraph. To concatenate
	them into one big paragraph, issue <code>\poemendemendationnotessingleparfalse</code> .
<code>\poemendexplanatorynote</code>	You can print explanatory notes at the end of each poem. To do
<code>\makepoemendexplanatorynotes</code>	this, issue <code>\makepoemendexplanatorynotes</code> just after <code>\begin{poem}</code> . Issue
<code>\putpoemendexplanatorynotes</code>	<code>\poemendexplanatorynote</code> where you wish to make a note, using the same con-
	ventions you use for <code>\textnote</code> . Where you want to output the notes, issue
	<code>\putpoemendexplanatorynotes</code> . These notes can have multi-line lemmas, just
	like textual notes.
	By default, each poem end note is given its own paragraph. To concatenate
	them into one big paragraph, issue <code>\poemendexplanatorynotessingleparfalse</code> .
<code>\poemendtextnote</code>	You can print textual notes at the end of each poem. To do this, is-
<code>\makepoemendtextnotes</code>	sue <code>\makepoemendtextnotes</code> just after <code>\begin{poem}</code> . Issue <code>\poemendtextnote</code>
<code>\putpoemendtextnotes</code>	where you wish to make a note, using the same conventions you use for <code>\textnote</code> .
	Where you want to output the notes, issue <code>\putpoemendtextnotes</code> . These notes
	can have multi-line lemmas, just like textual notes.
<code>\ifpoemendtextnotessinglepar</code>	By default, each poem end note is given its own paragraph. To concatenate
	them into one big paragraph, issue <code>\poemendtextnotessingleparfalse</code> .

## 11 Printing endnotes and index

<code>\testforauxonfirstrun</code>	If you don't want to listen to L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X complain about missing references during your first run, issue <code>\testforauxonfirstrun</code> , which won't let <code>\finish</code> , <code>\putexplanatory</code> , <code>\puttextnotes</code> , or <code>\putemendations</code> run unless there is an .aux file for a previous run. <i>Be sure to issue this command before issuing <code>\begin{document}</code>, since that reads in the existing .aux file, and overwrites it with a new one.</i>
<code>\putemendations</code>	This macro closes the external file for emendations and reads it in. It also puts an entry for the emendations section into your table of contents. After <code>\putemendations</code> has read in the external file for emendations, you will need to run your file through L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X again, to put the correct page number in the table of contents file.
<code>\puttextnotes</code> <code>\putexplanatory</code>	<code>\puttextnotes</code> and <code>\putexplanatory</code> do the same thing for the textual notes and for the explanatory notes. All of these last three commands restore normal hyphenation. Since all three are printed with the <code>\small</code> font size, the hyphen character is defined only for that size. This should not create other issues, however, because the commands that prohibit hyphenation in the <code>poem</code> environment (and in the <code>contententry</code> environment) are local to those environments, so the restoration of the hyphen character may be redundant.
<code>\putpoemindex</code>	<code>\putpoemindex</code> reads in the index at this point, and adds an entry for the index to external file for the table of contents.
<code>\putmultiplepoemindex</code>	If you are generating several indices using <code>splitindex</code> <code>\putmultiplepoemindex</code> reads in one of them at this point. For instructions about this command, see section 5.2, p. 18.
<code>\finish</code>	The <code>\finish</code> macro is deprecated but still available. It is designed to be placed just before <code>\end{document}</code> (which, in fact, it replaces — but you should still put an <code>\end{document}</code> at the end of your document for form's sake). <code>\finish</code> closes the external files for the three notes sections and reads them back into the document (turning the automatic hyphenation back on for these sections). It adds entries to the table of contents file for the notes sections. It reads in the formatted index file (which you have made from your raw .idx file using MakeIndex between L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X runs) and adds an entry for the index to the table of contents. Then it closes the external file for the table of contents and reads that in (putting it at the end of the document, as I explained before). Then it adds a page explaining that the symbol (by default *) at the bottom of certain pages marks places where a stanza break and a page break coincide. If you have an editor's introduction preceding your notes section, or a list of abbreviations, you may wish to consult the <code>\finish</code> macro for suggestions about how to add the lines to read those files in and add entries for them in the table of contents.

## 12 Special Cases

### 12.1 Epigraphs, attributions etc.

<code>\epigraph</code>	<code>\epigraph{}</code> , <code>\headnote{}</code> , <code>\attribution{}</code> , and <code>\poemdedication{}</code> set their
<code>\headnote</code>	arguments as epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, or dedications for poems or po-
<code>\attribution</code>	etic sequences. You can adjust the left and right margins of epigraphs by chang-
<code>\poemdedication</code>	ing the values of <code>\epigraphquotelleftmargin</code> or <code>\epigraphquoterightmargin</code> . If you have dedications, epigraphs, or attributions on the divider pages of editions that combine several volumes of poetry, use <code>\volumededication{}</code> , <code>\volumeepigraph{}</code> , and <code>\volumeattribution{}</code> .

### 12.2 Appending Publication Date

`\poemdate` You can append the date of the poem with `\poemdate{}`. Issue `\poemdate{}` just after `\end{poem}`. You can include both the composition and publication date if you wish simply by including both dates in the argument. (In fact, you can put anything in the argument, not just dates.) By default `\poemdate` places the date one `\bigskip` under left margin of the verse block of the poem, whether the poem is set at the left margin or whether the verse block is centered on the longest line. You can move the placement of the date left or right by changing the value of the length `\dateindent`. If you wish to change `\dateindent` you will have to issue `\setlength{\dateindent}{your value}` before each instance of `\poemdate`, since `poemscol` recalculates `\dateindent` freshly for every poem.

There is a slight bug in `\poemdate`. If there is a page turn between the last line of the poem and the date, and the last line has a runover portion, the date will be set flush with the indented runover portion of the line rather than with the beginning of the line. This should not in practice be a problem, because you should use `\longpage` or several `\shortpage` commands to move the orphan date line anyway. (For `\longpage` and `\shortpage` see section 12.12, page 38.)

### 12.3 Pausing line numbering

<code>\saveverselinenumber</code>	There are cases in which you might want to pause and resume line numbering later at the same number. For instance, you may have inset prose passages which do not take line numbers, but you wish to resume line numbering the verse after the passage. The way to set this is to issue <code>\end{stanza}</code> at the end of the stanza before the prose insert. Then issue <code>\saveverselinenumber</code> . Then issue <code>\end{poem}</code> . Insert the prose quotation (perhaps followed by <code>\attribution{}</code> ). Then issue <code>\begin{poem}</code> followed by <code>\restoreverselinenumber</code> and <code>\begin{stanza}</code> . Then begin entering the rest of the poem as usual. Longer, independent prose sections (such as the author's preface or prose poems) require different handling. To provide line numbers and notes for such prose sections, see section 14.
<code>\restoreverselinenumber</code>	

## 12.4 Quoted verse

`\quotedverse` Sometimes you wish to quote verse within verse (as when a speaker in a verse play quotes a poem). The `quotedverse` environment is designed for this contingency.

## 12.5 Multiline poem titles

`\poemtitlefirstline`  
`\poemtitlemiddleline`  
`\poemtitlelastline` Very long titles present special problems. In the first place, they require special provisions to make sure that page breaks don't happen in the middle of a title, or immediately after a title. In the second place, they raise questions about how the author wished to break them up over several lines. If you think it might matter, these macros make it possible for you to ensure that long titles are broken in exactly the same way in your text and in your table of contents. (I didn't pursue this question for titles in notes sections, and in notes sections these commands simply concatenate a long title.)

There are similar commands for most but not all of the whole series of titles for sequences, sequence sections, sequence subsections, and so on. If you need macros for a kind of multi-line title that is not already defined, see below at section 12.11, page 37.

Alternatively, you can just let `poemscol` handle the long titles by itself. If you are pretty sure that the author did not care how long titles were broken up, this would probably be the best thing to do. Remember also that if `poemscol` breaks a title across two lines, you can always force it not break the line by using enclosing the argument to `\poemtitle{}` in `\hbox{}`. You may get a complaint on your log file about an overfull `\hbox` if you do this, however.

## 12.6 Poems in sections

`\poemsectiontitle` `\poemsectiontitle{}` and `\poemsubsectiontitle{}`, as their names imply, are for the titles of sections or subsections of poems that have them. `\poemfirstsectiontitle` is for the first section of a poem with many sections. (It differs from `\poemsectiontitle` in that it tries to make it harder for a page break to separate the title of a poem from the title of its first section.) `\poemsectiontitlefirstline{}`, `\poemsectiontitlemiddleline{}`, `\poemsectiontitlelastline{}`, `\poemsectiontitlenocontents{}`, and `\poemsectiontitlebaretitle{}`, as their titles imply, are used for special cases such as long section titles, if you wish to specify explicitly how the title is to be broken up in the text and in the table of contents. You can construct variants of these macros for dealing with special cases I didn't anticipate by using the macros described in 12.11. .

## 12.7 Poetic sequences

`\sequencetitle`  
`\sequencesectiontitle`  
`\sequencefirstsectiontitle`  
`\sequencesubsectiontitle` Sequences of related poems, perhaps with an over-title, demand special handling in the text, in the notes sections, and in the table of contents. (A moment's thought will show that they are different in some ways from poems in

sections. For one thing, a sequence manifests a different relationship between part and whole than a poem in sections does, and often provides stronger experiences of momentary closure between sections.) `\sequencetitle{}` sets the title of the sequence, `\sequencesectiontitle{}` sets the titles of the sections of the sequence, and `\sequencesubsectiontitle{}` sets the titles of subsections of the sequence (there is even a command for the title of sub-subsections, `\sequencesubsubsubsectiontitle{}`). `\sequencefirstsectiontitle{}` gives a little more vertical space between the main title and the first section title than `\sequencesectiontitle{}` gives between adjacent sections later on in the sequence (since the over-title for the sequence is in larger type) and adjusts the page breaking penalties to reflect the fact that such titles should not occur near the bottom of a page, since there should be no page break between the sequence title and the title of the first section of the sequence (although page breaks are permissible, indeed even slightly favored, between later sections). There should also never be a page break between a section title and the first or second line of the section. The penalties `poemscot` sets should take care of these automatically, but you may still have cases which require you to specify a page break with `\pagebreak` or `\newpage`. There are a host of other commands, all with self-explanatory titles, that deal with some special situations that arise in setting the elements of poetic sequences, such as cases where you wish to specify how long titles will be broken up into lines, or where you wish no entry to be made for the section in the table of contents or in the notes sections. These macros don't of course exhaust the dizzying possibilities, but from them you can construct whatever other macros you may need.

Here is a list of all of the defined title commands.

- Macros for Poem titles
  - `\poemtitle`
  - `\poemtitlefirstline`
  - `\poemtitlemiddleline`
  - `\poemtitlelastline`
  - `\poemsubtitle`
  - `\poemtitlenotitle`
  - `\poemtitlenocontents`
  - `\poemtitlebaretitle`
  - `\poemonlycontents`
  - `\poemonlynotes`
- Poems in Sections
  - `\poemsectiontitle`
  - `\poemsectiontitlefirstline`
  - `\poemsectiontitlemiddleline`



- \poemsectiontitlelastline
- \poemsectiontitlenocontents
- \poemsectiontitlebaretitle
- \poemfirstsectiontitle
- \poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle
- \poemsubsectiontitle
- Sequence Titles
  - \sequencetitle
  - \sequencetitlefirstline
  - \sequencetitlemiddleline
  - \sequencetitlelastline
  - \sequencetitlenonotes
- Sequence Sections
  - \sequencesectiontitle
  - \sequencesectiontitlenocontents
  - \sequencesectiontitlenonotes
  - \sequencesectiontitlebaretitle
  - \sequencesectiontitlefirstline
  - \sequencesectiontitlemiddleline
  - \sequencesectiontitlelastline
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitle
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline
  - \sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline
  - \sequencesectionsubtitle
- Sequence Subsections
  - \sequencesubsectiontitle
  - \sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents
  - \sequencefirstsubsectiontitle
  - \sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents
  - \sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline

- `\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencesubsubsectiontitle`
- `\sequencesubsubsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents`

## 12.8 Titles with marginal markers

`\JHpoemtitle` In his edition of the poetry of José Maria Heredia, Tilmann Altenberg placed a marker in the margin next to poem titles with a reference to where in the apparatus notes on that poem could be found. To do this, use the `\JHpoemtitle` command. This command takes two arguments: first, the title of the poem, second, the label used by the `\label` command on the page of the notes section to which the title refers. So, you would issue the poem title command this way: `\JHpoemtitle{Los desvelados}{EP_LosDesvelados_AC}`. Up to version 2.49 of `poemscot` you had to be sure to define the label in the notes sections by issuing `\sources{\label{EP_LosDesvelados_AC}}`. This is no longer necessary, and `\JHpoemtitle` defines both the `\label` and the `\pageref`. Instructions are given in section 21.13.4, p. 97 for how to construct similar commands for sequences, sequence sections, and so on.

The following related commands are defined already:

- `\JHsequencetitle`
- `\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle`
- `\JHsequencesectiontitle`
- `\JHsequencesubsectiontitle`
- `\JHpoemsectiontitle`
- `\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle`
- `\JHpoemsubtitle`
- `\JHepigraph`
- `\JHprosesectiontitle`
- `\JHdedication`

If you are using `\JHpoemtitle` and its siblings, you need to be sure to add `\mparhack` to your package list. You can prevent the marginal reference from switching sides on alternate pages by issuing `\@mparswitchfalse` (be sure to put `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` around this command). You can control the side on which the marginal reference appears with `\normalmarginpar` (to place them on the right) or `\reversemarginpar` (to place them on the left). `\JHpoemtitle` and its siblings place the marginal reference using `\marginpar`.

`\setmpargpoemtitle`      `\setmargpoemtitle{}{}` is a more general version of `\JHpoemtitle{}{}`, with the second argument being any commands you want to be issued while the title is being processed.

`\margreftextnote`      Another feature of Altenberg’s Heredia edition is a marginal mark attached to lines to which text notes refer showing where in the apparatus a comment upon that line is to be found. `\margreftextnote` sets a label in the textual notes section, and sets a marginal note with a page reference to that label in the main text. Issue `\margreftextnote` *before* issuing the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` that closes the line to which it refers. (The textual note itself can be an ordinary `\textnote`, and should be placed, as usual, *after* the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}`.)

`\margreftextnote` generates its own label, so there is no need to make up one yourself.

`\margreftextnote` uses `\marginpar` rather than `\pmclsidepar` to set the note, because I had to use `\marginpar` for `\JHpoemtitle` and its siblings, and I wanted the whole family of markers to be controlled by the same settings. You use the settings that control the behavior of `\marginpar` (e.g. `\mparswitch` and `\reversemarginpar`) to control the behavior of these marks.

By default these marginal references are placed in the right margin. If you are centering the verse block on the longest line, the marginal references will move in closer to the line. (To center the verse block on the longest line, see section 3.2.) If you would prefer to keep the marginal references in the margin, set the boolean `\margrefstomargin` true.

If you define a new endnote type using `\definewnotetype`, `\definewnotetype` will also define a new `\margref` command to go with it.

`\setmargrefmarker`      Altenberg’s edition used a ding from the pifonts collection in the marginal marks made by `\margreftextnote` and its siblings. I have set the default to `\dag`, so as not to depend upon yet another style package. You can choose another mark using `\setmargrefmarker` (e.g. `\setmargrefmarker{\ding{228}}`).

`\margrefemendation`      `\margrefemendation` is a version of `\margreftextnote` for emendations.

`\margrefexplanatory`      `\margrefexplanatory` is a version of `\margreftextnote` for explanatory notes.

## 12.9 Empty poem titles and italicized poem titles

`\poemtitlenotitle`      `\poemtitlenotitle{}`, with its paradoxical name, is for poems without formal titles. Usually such poems are referred to by their first lines. This macro does not

produce a title in the text, but sets its argument in the table of contents and in the notes. Usually you use the first line as the moral equivalent of a title.

`\poemtitleitalic`

Titles with italics or other special formatting posed special problems in earlier versions (before version 1.7) since the typesetting commands gummed up how I passed parameters around that I was unable to solve using `\protect`. All of these commands are obsolete now, but are retained for backward compatibility. `\poemtitleitalic{ }{ }` takes two arguments. The first is the title of the poem with the italics (or small capitals or international characters or what have you), for typesetting, and the second is the title without the commands, for cross reference purposes. (Actually, now that `poemscol` no longer needs to treat italics in titles in a different way, it can be anything you want, since the second argument is discarded.)

`\poemtitlenotitleitalic`

`\poemtitlenotitleitalic{ }{ }`, with its doubly paradoxical name, is for poems without formal titles but with italicized words in their first lines. `\poemtitlenotitleitalic{ }{ }` takes two arguments. The first is the first line with the italics (for typesetting purposes), and the second is the first line without the italics (for crossreference purposes). This command is obsolete now that italics in titles no longer require special handling, but is retained for backwards compatibility.

## 12.10 Problem titles

`\poemtitlebaretitle`

`\poemtitleonlycontents`

`\poemtitleonlynotes`

A user planned to attach a footnote to a poem title, but didn't want the mark or the text of the note to show up in the contents or in the endnotes. I would usually have advised him to use `\sources` to send the text of the note to the endnotes, but he really wanted the title to include the footnote mark and to put the footnote on the same page. The solution to this problem was to set the title in the text separately from setting it in the notes and in the contents. If you have a problem title, one for instance in which the title in the text might cause problems in the contents or in the notes, you can send information separately to the places it will be used. `\poemtitlebaretitle{ }`, for instance simply sets the title in the text. Then you can use `\poemtitleonlycontents{ }` to send the title to the contents and `\poemtitleonlynotes{ }` to send the title to the notes. These commands are defined for poem titles, and for some but not all of the whole range of titles including sequence titles, sequence section titles, sequence section subtitles, and so on. But it would be easy to roll your own versions of these commands by looking below at section 12.11, page 37, or at the models in the code below at section 21.13.1, page 85.

`\poemtitlenocontents`

`\poemtitlenonotes`

`\poemtitlenotitle`

There are also macros to send information to any two of the relevant locations but not the third. `\poemtitlenocontents` sends the title to the text and to the notes, but not to the contents. `\poemtitlenonotes` sends the title to the text and to the contents, but not to the notes. `\poemtitlenotitle` sends the title to the contents and the notes, but not to the main text.

Remember that in the last resort, you can send information to the contents section with `\literalcontents`. To actually set a contents entry using `\literalcontents` is a tall order, however, since you would have to include all

the information from the `\c@ntentsinfo` macro for the relevant type of title. (For what `\c@ntentsinfo` does, see section 12.11, below.) For instance, for a poem called Test Poem that is the first in the volume, that would be:

```
\literalcontents{\setlength\contentsentryoverrun{\contentsindenttwoamount }
\begin{contentsentryenvironment}
\contentsindentone
{\contentspoemtitlefont
Test
Poem}
\contentsleaders
\pageref{testpoemlabel} % pick a unique label
\end{contentsentryenvironment}
\par}
```

Another tricky thing about this method is the `\pageref` line in the above, which is a `pageref` to find the page the poem appears on. You should put `\label{testpoemlabel}`, with any unique text for the label, on the page of the text where the poem occurs, in order to capture the correct page number. (Alternatively, you could just put the actual page number in here instead of the `pageref` line.)

Remember also that you can send information to the relevant notes sections using `\literaltextnote`, `\literalexplain`, and `\literalemend`.

## 12.11 Customizing titles

`poemscol` provides a large number of ways of setting titles, but conceivably you may wish to define your own. Here is a template for designing a new kind of title. Suppose you wish to create a kind of title called `\mytitle{}`. It would take one argument, which would be the title itself. The macro defining the `\mytitle` command should call three macros, `\set@p@emtitle`, to set the title in the main text and make the label for use by the contents and notes sections, `\c@ntentsinfo` to set the title in the table of contents, and `\t@xtnotesinfo`, which sets the title in the notes sections. (You should enclose the whole thing between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`.)

<code>\set@p@emtitle</code>	<code>\set@p@emtitle</code> takes six arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title (which, if you are calling this command inside of the definition of <code>\mytitle</code> should just be <code>#1</code> ), (2) commands to be issued before setting the title (minimally, a penalty, such as <code>\poemtitlepenalty</code> ), (3) the font size in which the title is to be set in the text (such as <code>\poemtitlefont</code> or <code>\large</code> ), (4) any indentation of the title ( <code>\relax</code> for <code>\poemtitle</code> , or <code>\titleindent</code> for <code>\sequencesectiontitle</code> ), (5) commands to be issued after the title is set (such as <code>\afterpoemtitleskip</code> ) and (6) the amount overrun lines in the title should be indented.
<code>\c@ntentsinfo</code>	<code>\c@ntentsinfo</code> takes four arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title, (2) the indentation of the title in the table of contents (such as <code>\contentsindentone</code> ), (3), the font size in which the title should be set (such as <code>\contentspoemtitlefont</code> )

and (4) the amount overrun lines in the table of contents should be indented (such as `\contentsindenttwoamount`).

`\t@xtnotesinfo`      `\t@xtnotesinfo` takes one argument, the title.

So, for example, to create a new kind of title called `\mytitle` which looks just like `\poemtitle`, issue

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\mytitle}[1]{%
\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
{\contentsindenttwoamount}%
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
}
\makeatother
```

(The `\z@` which is the sixth argument to `\set@p@emtitle` above is a constant set to zero. You will also notice that I became completely hysterical on the subject of preventing a page break after a poem title.)

By default, `poemscol` does not indent the overrun portion of titles relative to the first line of the title, but if that first line is indented will set the overrun portions to be indented the same amount. Overrun portions of titles in the table of contents will be indented by one `\contentsindentamount` more than the first line is indented. Both of these behaviors can be changed by changing the arguments to `\set@p@emtitle` or `\c@ntentsinfo`.

`\firstlinesettings`      If you wish to design a title which might have multiple lines, and you wish  
`\middlelinesettings`    to specify how those lines are broken up, you will need to write three macros:  
`\lastlinesettings`      one for the first line, one for middle lines, and one for the last lines. (This only  
`\restoresinglelinesettings` matters if you care how the title is broken up. You can choose to let `LATEX` do the  
breaking if you wish.) Before issuing `\set@p@emtitle` issue `\firstlinesettings`,  
`\middlelinesettings`, or `\lastlinesettings` (as the case may require). And  
issue `\restoresinglelinesettings` last of all in each of your three macros. The  
lines will be broken in the table of contents and in the body of the text in the  
same way, but will be run in in the notes sections.

## 12.12 Visual formatting

`\longpage`      The ideal in `LATEX` is to separate content markup and formatting as completely  
`\shortpage`    as possible. In the text itself you simply mark the logical units (a poem, a title,  
a stanza, a textual note), and a header program (like `poemscol`) interprets the  
meaning of those terms typographically. However, one still winds up having to do  
some visual formatting. Especially in prose sections, such as in the textual notes,  
you will sometimes have to enlarge or shrink a page by one line in order to avoid  
an intractable widow or club line, and when one does so one must be careful to  
do the same to the other member of the two-page spread of which that page is a  
part so that the spread will be properly balanced. These commands enable one to

wiggle pagelength enough to handle these problems. Since verse sections should be set with `\raggedbottom` in effect, the commands are not necessary in verse sections.

`\longpage` and `\shortpage` are cumulative: issuing `\longpage` twice lengthens the page by two lines, and issuing `\shortpage` twice shortens the page by two lines.

## 13 Customizing page geometry and page styles

### 13.1 Font sizes, skips, sinks, indents, and penalties

`poemscol` sets the font sizes, but not the font family, of fonts for many common tasks, in order to create a hierarchy of sizes. They can be changed with a `\renewcommand` of the following form, where the first number is the font size in points and the second is the leading:

```
\renewcommand{\volumetitlefont}{\fontsize{18}{23}\selectfont}
```

The following table gives the default values for the fonts. The titles of the fonts give their uses. `Backmatterheaderfont` is for setting the titles of back matter sections. Sequence section titles use `poemtitlefont`. `Backmattertext font` is `\small`, `backmatterintrofont` is `\normalsize`.

Font	Size	Leading
<code>volumetitlefont</code>	18	23
<code>volumesubtitlefont</code>	14	18
<code>poemtitlefont</code>	14	18
<code>sequencetitlefont</code>	16	20
<code>subsectiontitlefont</code>	12	14.5
<code>backmatterheaderfont</code>	16	20
<code>backmattervolumeont</code>	12	14.5
<code>backmattervolumesubtitlefont</code>	11	13
<code>contentsvolumeont</code>	13	20
<code>contentsvolumesubtitlefont</code>	12	14.5
<code>contentssequencetitlefont</code>	10	14
<code>contentspoemtitlefont</code>	10	14

The following table gives various skips, sinks, penalties, and indentations. The titles of these should be self-explanatory. These should be changed with `\renewcommand` as follows:

```
\newcommand{\volumetitlesink}{\leavevmode\vspace{23.5pt}}
```

Name	Argument	Comment
backmattersink	21.5pt	
backmatterafterheadersink	11pt	
afterpoemtitleskip	<code>\smallskip</code>	
afterpoemskip	<code>\bigskip</code>	
aftersequencetitleskip	<code>\medskip</code>	
stanzaskip	<code>\medskip</code>	Extra skip between stanzas
titleindent	<code>\titleindentamount (1pc)</code>	use <code>\setlength</code> to change
parindent	<code>\titleindentamount</code>	
volumetitleshift	<code>\volumetitleshiftamount (1pc)</code>	use <code>\setlength</code> to change
contentsindentone	24pt	
contentsindenttwo	42pt	
contentsindentthree	60pt	
contentsindentfour	72pt	
runoverindentvalue	6em	for runover lines in verse
verseindent	2em	for formally indented lines
notesclubpoempenalty	-300	
notessequenceclubpenalty	-1500	
notesvolumetitlepenalty	-1500	
epigraphquoteleftmargin	1.5em	for epigraphs, attributions, etc.
epigraphquoterightmargin	1.5em	

## 13.2 Customizing page styles

`poemscol` sets several default page styles, defined below. The main page style is “fancy,” which is used for the main body of the poetry, prose frontmatter (such as introductions), and the endnotes sections. “Volumefirststyle” is for the first page of a volume of poems. “Volumetitlestyle” is for the title page of a volume of poems. The external file for the table of contents redefines “fancy,” so you should issue `\resetpagestyle` after issuing `\putpoemcontents`. `\resetpagestyle` resets the page style to “main” (which is the same as the original “fancy”).

You can change the text in the left running head by issuing `\lefthead{your header}` or `\volumeheader{your header}`. (The commands are synonyms.) You can change the text in the right running head by issuing `\righthead{your header}`.

If you want to change to look of the headers, you can’t just issue, say `\fancyhead[R0]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}`. You must redefine the fancy-page style “fancy” or “main.” You can find the default definitions of those page styles below at 21.7, page 65.

## 13.3 Special page style for long poems

The fancy page style “longpoem” will add information of the form “firstline–lastline” to the running header. This page style otherwise resembles “main,” and “fancy.” Issue `\pagestyle{longpoem}` to use this page style. If you use “longpoem,” be sure to call `etex` and `emarks` in your preamble. Also, when a poem



ends, be sure to issue `\newpage`, otherwise the running header will list the first line on the page from the first poem and the last line on the page from the second poem.

The header will include the abbreviation l. (for a single line) or ll. (for a range of lines). You can change either abbreviation with `\changesinglelineabbrev` or `\changemultiplelineabbrev`. So, for instance, to get rid of the abbreviations entirely, issue `\changemultiplelineabbrev{\relax}` and `\changesinglelineabbrev{\relax}`.

## 13.4 Page geometry and type leading

You have to give geometry the values that suit you. I include the values I used in my own book, just to give you a starting place. The default values for `marginparsep` and `marginparwidth` are different now (18pt and 18pt respectively). With that warning, here is a list of the values I used:

<code>textheight</code>	6.75in
<code>marginparsep</code>	18pt
<code>marginparwidth</code>	18pt
<code>headheight</code>	14pt
<code>paperwidth</code>	6in
<code>paperheight</code>	9in
<code>inner</code>	4.5pc
<code>outer</code>	4.5pc
<code>footskip</code>	15pt

In my own book I also, strictly to save money, and at the price of some ugliness, changed the definition of `\normalsize` and `\small`, so that the former was 10 pt type on 11 pt leading (rather than 12 pt), and that the latter was 9 pt type on 10 pt leading. You can reproduce this setting by issuing `\tightleading`, although I would advise not doing so unless you are under financial constraints.

## 14 Prose Sections with line numbers

### 14.1 Setup

`poemscol` uses the `lineno` package to make marginal line numbers for prose sections such as the Author's Introduction, Afterword, Author's Notes, or such prose interludes or prose poems the volume may include. To control the appearance, placement, and frequency of marginal line numbers in prose sections, you may wish to consult the manual to `lineno`. I have added a minimal user interface to make `lineno` cohere with `poemscol`. You may have to fiddle with the parameters of both `poemscol` and `lineno` to persuade them to set marginal line numbers that look the same way in prose and verse contexts. The default values should work as is.

Line numbers in prose sections are placed using a different `\length` from that used in verse sections. Essentially, verse sections, and prose sections which use paragraph and sentence numbering — see below, in section 15 — place the marginal line numbers using `\marginparsep`. Prose sections which are numbered by line use `\linenumbersep` instead, which is a length defined in the `lineno` package. I have given values for both lengths which seem to place line numbers on the left and on the right side in prose sections roughly where they are placed in verse sections. You can change these values with `\setcounter{countername}{length}`.

`\verselinenumberstoleft` and `\verselinenumberstoright` also place the line numbers to the left or to the right, respectively, in prose sections. If you wish the numbering to appear on a different side in prose contexts you can set the side by issuing `\leftlinenumbers` or `\rightlinenumbers`. These last are commands from the `lineno` package. The two forms in which line numbers switch sides in prose contexts can't at the moment be used, because of a clash between how `lineno` handles line numbers that switch sides and the way I pass the line numbers to notes sections. If you have set the verse line numbers to switch sides, prose line numbers will appear on the right side. I hope soon to find a workaround for this problem.

By default, the line modulo for prose sections is the same as that for verse sections; if you have a line number every 5 lines in verse, you will have the same in prose. You can set the prose line modulo independently with `\setprosemodulo`.

`poemscol` may deal with rather long stretches of prose, but it is not designed to be used for critical editions of extended prose texts, as `EDMAC`, `reledmac`, or `ednotes` are. The method of entering line ranges into notes in prose contexts is something of a hack, and rather a worse one than the one employed in verse contexts, since it involves using two labels for each note, one to capture the line number of the beginning, the other to capture the line number of the end. Other limitations of this method may show up with longer prose extracts.

`\prosesectiontitle`

Prose sections may be titled with `\prosesectiontitle{}` which is essentially just `\poemtitle`, or `\prosesectiontitlenotitle`, which is essentially just `\poemtitlenotitle`. (Remember that if you use the latter command, you must specify a “dummy” title to use in the note and contents sections.) They will be formatted in the notes and contents sections as poems are. Alternatively, you can use the macros for defining new kinds of titles, in section 12.11, page 37, to make new kinds of titles for prose sections.

`prosesection`

Prose sections should be enclosed in a `prosesection` environment (between `\begin{prosesection}` and `\end{prosesection}`). Entering this environment sets the modulo repeat for line numbering to the same value that prevails in verse contexts, and resets the prose line number to zero. If for some reason you do not wish to reset the line number but continue on from where it left off at the end of the last prose section, use the `prosesectionnoreset` environment instead.

`\setprosemodulo`

If you wish to set the modulo repeat for line numbering in prose to some value different for that from verse contexts, issue the new modulo as the argument to `\setprosemodulo{}`.

It is possible, if a prose section is interpolated in the midst of

verse, to number the prose and verse continuously. To move from a verse passage to a prose passage, just before the `\end{poem}` at the end of the first verse passage issue `\saveverselinenumber` to save the number of the verse passage. After you issue `\begin{prosesection}` issue `\resetlinenumber[\theverselineumberscratch]` to apply that number to the prose section. To number continuously while moving from prose to verse is more tricky. One way might be to mark a label at the end of the prose passage with `\proselinelabel{prose end label}` (or some other suitably unique label). This label will record the line number of the last prose line. Pass that value to `\restoreverselinenumber` by issuing `\setcounterfromref{verselinenumberscratch}{prose end label}`. Then issue `\restoreverselinenumber` just after issuing the `\begin{poem}` that restarts the verse again. I would recommend against numbering verse and prose continuously, however, since a verse line and a prose line are different categories of thing, the one being an element of prosody, the other being only an element of typography.

`\proselinelabel` `\proselinelabel` is simply `\linelabel` from `lineno`. I have provided the new name to make it easy to distinguish from `\poemlinelabel`.

## 14.2 Endnotes for prose sections

`\prosetextnote` `\prosetextnote` Special versions of `\textnote`, `\emendation` and `\explanatory` are available for use in prose sections. `\prosetextnote`, `\proseemendation`, and `\proseexplanatory` differ from the verse versions in that they each require an extra argument, a unique label to be used in locating the line number for use by the notes commands. If `\maketextnotes`, `\makeemendations`, or `\makeexplanatorynotes` have been issued, the endnotes will be sent to the usual sections, where all the notes from that prose section will be grouped into a paragraph, with the entry headed by the title given by `\prosesectiontitle{}`, just as if that were the title of a poem. `\textnotesatfoot`, `\emendationsatfoot`, and `\explanationsatfoot` will send the notes from prose contexts to the usual footnote levels. Notes commands in prose contexts take three arguments. As in verse sections, in prose sections textnotes, explanatory notes, and emendations have an optional first argument for recording line ranges. As in verse sections, you can record these line ranges either by simply putting in the argument how many lines the lemma will refer to (a deprecated method retained for backward compatibility reasons), or the argument of a `\proselinelabel` command on the last line of the lemma. (The only difference from the verse version here is that you should make the label using the `\proselinelabel` command, rather than with the `\poemlinelabel` command.) The second argument is a label to identify each note uniquely, which is used to find the line number at which the note begins. You will need a different label for every note. The third argument is the text of the note, which should include both the lemma and the rest of the note, as in the notes for verse sections. `\proseemendation[]{}{}` and `\proseexplanatory[]{}{}` are coded the same way. So, if you wished to make a textual note on a passage that begins with “Call me Ishmael.” and ends “a way of driving away the spleen,”

you would issue at the point where the note is to occur (at the beginning of the passage):

```
\prosetextnote[a way of driving away the spleen] {Call me Ishmael}
{Call me Ishmael \ldots\ a way of driving away the spleen} text of
textual note}
```

On the last line of the passage to which the note refers you would issue:

```
\proselinelabel{a way of driving away the spleen}.
```

`\prosetsvvariant` You can issue `\sources` and `\tsentry` in prose contexts as usual. For type-script variants and accidental variants you need to issue `\prosetsvvariant[]{}{}`, `\proseaccidental{}{}`, and `\prosetsvaccidental{}{}`. `\prosetsvvariant` is entered just as `\prosetextnote[]{}{}` is, with an optional argument (for use with line ranges, as usual), and two mandatory arguments (the first a label to capture the line number, the second the lemma and comment).

`\proseaccidental` and `\prosetsvaccidental` take only the two mandatory arguments, since by definition an accidental variant is confined to one line.

One caveat: because the line numbers for notes in prose contexts are generated by a label/ref mechanism, each note will result in a complaint about an undefined reference the first time the file is run through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Either run the first pass in quiet mode, or be prepared to ignore a lot of griping until L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X has generated the .aux file at the end of the first run.

## 15 Paragraph and sentence annotation

### 15.1 Setup

Annotating a prose section by sentence number, or by paragraph number and sentence number, has some advantages over annotating it by line number. The principal advantage is that the annotation and reference system can remain stable over multiple editions, even if they are set in different formats. The most familiar of such systems is the chapter and verse system in the Bible, introduced by Archbishop Stephen Langton in the thirteenth century (who divided the Vulgate edition into numbered chapters) and by Robert Estienne in the sixteenth century (who added the verse numbers). Such a form of annotation might be especially useful for medieval prosimetra, a form combining verse and prose. (Hence the commands that follow often begin with `pm`.)

`pmsection` You should put prose marked up for sentence and paragraph annotation in a `pmsection` environment. You do not need to put prose marked up for sentence and paragraph annotation in a `prosesection` environment. That environment is only needed if you are line-numbering prose. You also do not need to load the `lineno` package if you are using the sentence and paragraph system for annotating prose. You might, however, still wish to set the title with `\prosesectiontitle`.

`\setprosebysentence` `\setprosebysentence` sets `poemscol` to number prose by sentence rather than by line number. This command is mostly a placeholder now, used only for setting the value of `\marginparsep` to something better for prose. (`\marginparsep` sets

how far the line numbers are from the text block.) `\verselinenumberstoleft`, `\verselinenumberstoright`, and `\verselinenumbersswitch` each pick convenient values for `\marginparsep`. By default these values all line up on the page, but if you change any of them, you may have to use reset `\marginparsep` to some value you will have to find by trial and error, since they each use `\marginparsep` in slightly different ways. You can change `\marginparsep` either by using `\setlength{\marginparsep}{length}` or, better, by using `\renewcommand` to change the setting of `\marginparsep` in `\verselinenumberstoleft` or whatever else you intend to use. Adjust `\headoffsetlength` to make the page numbers line up with the line numbers.

`\pmsentence` Each sentence must begin with `\pmsentence`. `\pmsentence` increments the sentence counter, optionally puts the sentence number in the running text, and optionally puts the sentence number in the margin.

`\runningsentencenumberstrue` sets sentence numbers in the running text. To set sentence numbers in the margin, issue `\marginsentencenumberstrue`. You can issue both, either, or neither of these commands.

`\setpmmodulo` If you are putting sentence numbers in the margin, you need not number every sentence. Indeed, if there is more than one sentence on a line, the numbers will overwrite each other (unless you use the `marn.sty` package, and substitute `\marn` for `\pmclrightsidepar`, `\pmclleftsidepar` or `\pmclsidepar` in the code for `\pmsentence`). You can also avoid overlapping sentence numbers by using `\pmsentencetwo` and its siblings, defined below. You can set the modulo for sentence marginal numbers by issuing `\setpmmodulo{}`.

`\pmsentencetwo` If you know, from a prior run, that there will be a second or third sentence on some particular line, marking them with these commands will ensure that the marginal sentence numbers do not overwrite each other. These macros are something of a kludge, but they will do until I figure out how to do this better.

`\pmnumberstoright` If you wish to control the margin in which sentence and paragraph numbers appear, issue `\pmnumbersright`, `\pmnumbersleft`, `\pmnumbersgutter`, or `\pmnumbersouter`. By default, these numbers will line up with the line numbers in verse sections. If you change the value of `\marginparsep` for prose sections from those used by their verse equivalents, it is a good idea to issue the verse equivalent command (`\versenumberstoright` or whatever) again when you move from a prose to a verse environment.

`\runningsentencenumberformat` sets the format of running sentence numbers. Currently it is `\textsuperscript` (the numbers are set as superscripts) and `\tiny`. The format of marginal sentence numbers is set by `\marginsentencenumberformat`. Currently it is `\tiny`. Definitions of both commands are found at section 21.20, page 116. You can change either with `\renewcommand`.

`\pmpara` You can also number paragraphs. Each paragraph must begin with `\pmpara`. `\pmpara` increments the paragraph counter, optionally puts the paragraph number in the running text, and optionally puts the paragraph number in the margin. To reset the sentence counter at the beginning of each paragraph, issue `\pmsentencebyparatrue` in your preamble. To set paragraph numbers in the margin, issue `\pmparainmartrue`. To set paragraph numbers in the running text,

issue `\pmpararunningtrue`. You can issue both, either, or neither of these last two commands. Which margin these numbers are set in is controlled by the same commands that control placement of marginal sentence numbers.

If you begin a paragraph with `\pmpara poemscol` will assume that you intend to include the paragraph number in your notes (in the form `<paragraph number>:<sentence number>` for simple references, or `<first paragraph number>:<first sentence number> – <lastparagraph number>:<last sentence number>` for ranges of sentences) even if you do not reset the sentence number at the beginning of each paragraph. Normally you would not issue `\pmpara` if you are not resetting the sentence number at the beginning of each paragraph, since under those circumstances you don't really need to keep track of the paragraph numbers, in which case each note would simply include the sentence number (just as in verse it would include the line number). In the unusual event in which you wish to put the paragraph number in the margin but refer only to sentence numbers in the notes, simply follow every use of `\pmpara` with `\pmparasfalse`.

`\pmpararunningformat`  
`\pmparmarformat`

The format of running paragraph numbers is set by `\pmpararunningformat`. Currently it is `\textbf` and `\small`. The format of marginal paragraph numbers is set by `\pmparmarformat`. Currently it is `\textbf` and `\small`. The definitions of these commands are found at section 21.20, page 120, Either can be changed with `\renewcommand`.

## 15.2 Cross references by sentence and paragraph

`\sentencelabel`

To make labels that refer to sentences or paragraphs, issue `\sentencelabel{}`. The label will be either both the paragraph number and the sentence number (if you are resetting sentence numbers by paragraph), or only the sentence number (if you are not resetting sentence numbers by paragraph).

## 15.3 End notes by sentence and paragraph

`\pmtextrnote`  
`\pmexplanatory`  
`\pmemendation`  
`\pmaccidental`  
`\pmtsvariant`  
`\pmtsaccidental`

`\pmtextrnote`, `\pmexplanatory`, `\pmemendation`, `\pmaccidental`, `\pmtsvariant` and `\pmtsaccidental` are special versions of the usual endnote commands for use with annotations by sentence and paragraph. If you have not issued `\pmsentencebypara` these commands will write the sentence number at the head of each note, where the line number would usually go. If you have issued `\pmsentencebypara`, these commands will issue both the paragraph and sentence number, in the format `<paragraph number>:<sentence number>`. You can refer to ranges of sentences (or paragraphs and sentences) in a way very similar to how you do so in verse sections. At the end of the range, issue a `\sentencelabel` command, with a unique label. At the beginning of the range, issue your `\pmtextrnote` command with the optional argument in square brackets before the main argument, giving your unique label as the value of that argument, e.g. `\pmtextrnote[some label]{text of lemma} comment`. At the end of your range, issue `\sentencelabel{some label}`, using the same label you put in the square brackets for the `\pmtextrnote`. If you have not issued `\pmsentencebypara`, the range will simply be the range of sentence numbers. If you have issued

`\pmsentencebypara`, the range will include paragraph and sentence numbers, like this: `<first paragraph number>:<first sentence number> – <lastparagraph number>:<last sentence number>`, for example: 4:12–6:13.

`\sources` needs no special handling if you are annotating by sentence and paragraph.

## 15.4 Footnotes by sentence and paragraph

`\textnoteatfoot` shifts `\pmtextnotes` to the foot, as with `\prosetextnote`. `\emendationsatfoot` and `\explanationsatfoot` work the same way.

## 15.5 Bible chapter and verse

Since `\pmsentence` and `\pmpar` are the moral equivalents of bible verse and chapter, `\biblechapter` and `\bibleverse` are provided for convenience.

# 16 Parallel text editions

## 16.1 Setup for parallel texts in verse

`poemscol` can make parallel text editions in which the contrasting versions are set on facing verso and recto pages. `poemscol` does not automatically provide the page breaks for parallel editions, and even if it did, one would still probably have to specify page breaks every two or three pages to keep the texts in register anyway, so you will have to use `\newpage` to mark every page break. If you are willing to set the page breaks yourself, however, `poemscol` does provide macros for keeping the line count correct on successive recto or verso pages, and for keeping track of whether or not one was in the middle of a stanza when one closed the previous verso or recto page (as the case may be). And it provides, in the `\synchrolabel` and `\synchroref` commands, a way of marking which lines on the recto side correspond to particular lines on the verso side. `\synchroref` will even tag the marginal line number it makes with a marker to specify the text to which it refers.

```
\startparalleltxts
\finishparalleltxts
  parallelverse
```

You must begin a region of parallel text on a *verso* page. A parallel text region must begin with `\startparalleltxts` and end with `\finishparalleltxts`. Setting parallel texts requires one to redefine the poem and stanza environments, and `\startparalleltxts` redefines those environments. You can make those changes local to the parallel text region by using `\begin{parallelverse}` and `\end{parallelverse}` rather than `\startparalleltxts` and `\finishparalleltxts`. `\startparalleltxts` and `\finishparalleltxts` can be issued on their own but I have combined them to make the `parallelverse` environment.

Although usually with `poemscol` it is up to you where to put the marginal line numbers, when you issue `\startparalleltxts` the positions are fixed as follows: marginal line numbers are in the left margin, line cross references (marking which lines in the recto text correspond to which lines in the verso text, which are made with `\synchroref`) are in the right margin.

<code>\startrectopage</code> <code>\finishrectopage</code> <code>\startversopage</code> <code>\finishversopage</code>  <code>\versopoemtitle</code> <code>\rectopoemtitle</code> <code>\versopoemtitlenocontents</code> <code>\rectopoemtitlenocontents</code>	<p>Verso pages should begin with <code>\startversopage</code> and end with <code>\finishversopage</code>. Recto pages should begin with <code>\startrectopage</code> and end with <code>\finishrectopage</code>. You have to declare the page breaks manually, so be sure you are putting the <code>\finishversopage</code> or <code>\finishrectopage</code> commands in places which will work. <code>\finishparalleltexts</code> just makes certain that stanzas, and poems that you opened in a region of parallel texts are closed when you leave it.</p> <p>Use <code>\versopoemtitle</code> and <code>\rectopoemtitle</code> rather than <code>\poemtitle</code> for the title of the poem (or prose passage) on the verso or recto pages. If you are making a parallel text of Wordsworth's 1805 and 1850 versions of <i>The Prelude</i>, you might want to use something like <code>\versopoemtitle{The Prelude (1805 Version)}</code> and <code>\rectopoemtitle{The Prelude (1850 Version)}</code>. I have also made versions of these commands that do not make entries in the table of contents, should the need arise for them. If you wish to make titles for other things, such as poetic sequences or sequence sections, you can use the techniques described in section 12.11 above, page 37, except substitute the macro <code>\versoset@p@emtitle</code> or <code>\rectoset@p@emtitle</code> for <code>\set@p@emtitle</code>, using all the same arguments you would have used with <code>\set@p@emtitle</code>.</p>
--	--

## 16.2 Parallel texts and on the fly note types

If you are making a parallel text edition, you may need to use `\definewnotetype` to make the different kinds of endnote for the parallel texts. For instance, if you are making a parallel text of Wordsworth's 1805 and 1850 versions of *The Prelude*, you may use something like `\fiveexplanatory` and `\fiftyexplanatory` for explanatory notes for the poems on the verso and recto pages.

<code>\keeptitlestraight</code>	<p>Without special care, <code>poemscol</code> may become confused about whether it has seen, for example, a <code>\fiveexplanatory</code> for a particular book of <i>The Prelude</i> or not, and, if <code>\settitleinnotes</code> is set, may neglect to put the title of that book of <i>The Prelude</i> in the notes for the first note for that book. To remedy this, <code>\versopoemtitle</code> and <code>\rectopoemtitle</code> set up a way of keeping track whether each species of note has appeared already or not. While setting parallel texts <code>poemscol</code> checks at the beginning of every verso or recto page whether the the different species of endnote for the poem on that page has appeared before. On rare occasions this turns out not to be frequently enough in cases where you are defining your own kinds of endnote. In this case, the following hack, <code>\keeptitlesstraight</code>, will check whether the verso or recto poem has set that species of note each time it is issued. Suppose, for instance, going back to our Wordsworth example, that you have defined, using <code>\definewnotetype</code>, the following six kinds of endnotes: <code>\fivetextnote</code>, <code>\fiveemendation</code>, <code>\fiveexplanatory</code>, <code>\fiftytextnote</code>, <code>\fiftyemendation</code>, and <code>\fiftyexplanatory</code>. You should define a new command called <code>\keeptitlesstraight</code> to keep track of these six kinds of note. Here is how it might look:</p>
---------------------------------	---



```

\newcommand{\keeptitlesstraight}{
\pretocmd{\fivetextnote}{\versotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
\pretocmd{\fiveemendation}{\versotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
\pretocmd{\fiveexplanatory}{\versotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
\pretocmd{\fiftytextnote}{\rectotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
\pretocmd{\fiftyemendation}{\rectotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
\pretocmd{\fiftyexplanatory}{\rectotitleinnotescheck}{\relax}{\relax}
}

```

All those fields filled with `\relax` are for reporting the success of failure `\pretocmd` has had in appending `\versotitleinnotescheck` (or `\rectotitleinnotescheck`) to the different endnotes commands. You may wish to replace the `\relax` with something like `\typeout{fiftytextnote modified}` or `\typeout{fiftytextnote not modified}`.

If you are using the `\keeptitlesstraight` hack described here, you should add `etoolbox` to your package list.

`\resettitleinnotes` If you are defining new kinds of note, and a section of non-parallel texts follow a section of parallel texts, you will need to issue the following hack after the parallel texts close (again I am using the Wordsworth example):

```

\newcommand{\resettitleinnotes}{
\nofiveemendationyettrue%
\nofiveexplanatoryyettrue%
\nofivetextnoteyettrue%
\nofiftyemendationyettrue%
\nofiftyexplanatoryyettrue%
\nofiftytextnoteyettrue%
}

```

### 16.3 Parallel texts and generic note types

`\rectotextnote` In case you find using these hacks a bit burdensome, I have defined for your convenience six generic kinds of endnote for use in parallel text editions: `\rectoemendation`, `\rectoexplanatory`, `\versotextnote`, `\versoemendation`, `\versoexplanatory`, as well as `\rectoprosetextnote`, `\versoprosetextnote`, `\rectoproseeemendation`, `\versoproseeemendation`, `\rectoproseeexplanatory`, and `\versoproseeexplanatory`. (I have also defined `\literalrectotextnote`, `\literalversotextnote`, `\literalrectoemendation`, `\literalversoemendation`, `\literalrectoexplain`, and `\literalversoexplain` for sending material other than formal endnotes to these endnote sections. You can use all of these without issuing the moral equivalent of `\keeptitlesstraight` and `\resettitleinnotes`.

`\makerectotextnotes` To use these kinds of note, issue `\makeversotextnotes`, `\makerectoemendations`, `\makeversoemendations`, `\makeversoexplanatorynotes` or their recto equivalents in your preamble. You can mark up your texts with these notes just as you would do with `\textnote`, `\emendation` or `\explanatory` (or `\literalversotextnote`, `\literalversoemendation` and

`\literalversoexplain`), without any of the special hacks I have just described.

`\changerectotextnotesname` I have given the endnotes sections generated by these notes rather generic names (`\rectotextnote` and `\versotextnote` for instance, both open endnote sections with the title TEXTUAL NOTES, with a running header of the form “Textual Notes to pp. xx–yy” an a contents entry of Textual Notes). You will probably need to change those to something more descriptive. You can change any of these with `\changeversotextnotesname{Your Title}`, `\changeversotextnotesheader{Your running header}`, and `\changeversotextnotescontentsname{Your contents entry}`. You can change the appearance of these notes by changing the values of the booleans `\versotextnotessinglepar` and `\versotextnotestwocol`. Similar sets of commands are available for `\versoemendation` and `\versoexplanatory` and their recto equivalents.

`\putrectotextnotes` To include these note sections in your document, issue `\putversotextnotes`, `\putrectotextnotes`, `\putversoemendations`, `\putrectoemendations`, `\putversoexplanatorynotes`, or `\putrectoexplanatorynotes` at the point where you wish them to appear. These commands behave exactly like `\puttextnotes`.

## 16.4 Parallel text labels

`\synchrolabel` You may want to mark cross references to make it clear to the reader which line of the poem on the recto side of the spread corresponds to a particular line on the verso side. To mark these cross references, you need to make a label on the verso side (using `\synchrolabel`), and a corresponding reference on the recto side (using `\synchroref`). You may also wish to add a mark to that reference (using `\setsynchroflag`) to specify to the reader what edition it refers to. So, for instance, if your verso text is the 1805 version of Wordsworth’s *The Prelude*, and your recto text is the 1850 version, you may wish to specify `\setsynchroflag{1805: }`, which will preface the references put out by the `\synchroref` command with ‘1805: ’. Suppose you wished to tie these corresponding passages from the “Boy of Winander” episode in Book 3. To make the label, issue the `\synchrolabel` command on the verso side (the 1805 side) just after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` which closes the line you wish to label:

```
This boy was taken from his mates, and died \verseline
In childhood ere he was full ten years old \verseline
\synchrolabel{full ten years old}
```

You don’t have to quote the whole line in the label, but it should be long enough to uniquely pick out that line in the poem. (If the line is repeated in the poem, you will have to exercise your ingenuity in making up a unique label.)

Over on the recto side (the 1850 side), you will want to use `\synchroref` in order to print the marginal cross reference. The `\synchroref` command should come *before* the `\verseline` that closes the line it is tied to, as follows:

```

This Boy was taken from his mates, and died\verseline
In childhood, ere he was full twelve years old.
\synchroref{full ten years old}}\verseline

```

## 16.5 Parallel prose passages

`parallelprose` `poemscol` is not designed to manage long parallel texts in prose, but for shorter texts up to a couple of dozen pages, such as two versions of an Author's Preface, say, `poemscol` has the `parallelprose` environment. (You can also use `\startparalleltextprose` and `\finishparalleltextprose`.) Like passages of parallel text in verse, parallel prose passages must start on a verso page.

`\startversoprosepage` Each verso page must start with `\startversoprosepage` and finish with `\finishversoprosepage`, and each recto page must start with `\startrectoprosepage` and finish with `\finishrectoprosepage`. If a page continues a paragraph from the previous page, say, from a previous recto page, put the beginning of the text on the second page right after the `\startrectopage` command with no blank line. (Alternatively, you could just begin that page with `\noindent`.)

`\parastart` You must mark the beginning and end of every paragraph in parallel prose passages with `\parastart` and `\paraend`.

You will have to pick the page breaks manually, using `\newpage`, once you find where  $\text{\LaTeX}$  would naturally break the page. Because how  $\text{\LaTeX}$  justifies text is a little unpredictable, however, you may find that the line before the page break, which filled the line before you added the page break, is actually a little shorter, and thus is no longer justified, once you add the page break. You may well not be able to exactly fill out the line by trial and error, adding a word or even just a syllable, to the line at a time. You can kludge around the problem, however, by adding an `\hfil` between each word of the last line.

## 17 Using poemscol in a multilingual world

`\changecontentsname` By default, `poemscol` uses English language titles for such things as the Table of Contents, the Explanatory Notes, and so on, and uses English language running headers. As of version 2.5 these are easily changed. To change the name of the Table of Contents (the default is CONTENTS) to `Inhaltsverzeichnis`, issue `\changecontentsname{Inhaltsverzeichnis}`. To change the running header on contents pages, issue `\changecontentsheader{your header}`.

`\changenotesname` To change the name for the endnote section for textual notes (the default is TEXTUAL NOTES), issue `\changenotesname{your version}`. To change the running header (by default "Textual Notes to") issue `\changenotesheader{your version}`. To change the name for the textual notes in the table of contents issue `\changetextnotescontentsname{your version}`.

`\changesinglepageabbrev` Running headers refer to single pages with the English abbreviation "p." and to multiple pages with the English abbreviation

“pp.” To change these issue `\changesinglepageabbrev{new abbrev}` or `\changemultiplepageabbrev{new abbrev}` respectively. The ultimate outcome is to translate a header of the form “Textual Notes to pp. xx-yy” to the form appropriate for your language.

<code>\changeemendationsname</code>	To change the name for the endnote section for emendations (the default is EMENDATIONS), issue <code>\changeemendationsname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (by default “Emendations to”) issue <code>\changeemendationsheader{your version}</code> . To change the name for the emendations in the table of contents issue <code>\changeemendationscontentsname{your version}</code> .
<code>\changeexplanationsname</code>	To change the name for the endnote section for explanatory notes (the default is EXPLANATORY NOTES), issue <code>\changeexplanationsname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (by default “Explanatory Notes to”) issue <code>\changeexplanationsheader{your version}</code> . To change the name for the explanatory notes in the table of contents issue <code>\changeexplanationscontentsname{your version}</code> .
<code>\changepoemindexname</code>	To change the name for the index (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”, issue <code>\changepoemindexname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”) issue <code>\changepoemindexheader{your version}</code> . To change the contents entry for the index (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”) issue <code>\changepoemindexcontentsname{your version}</code> .

## 18 A sample driver file

If you are compiling a collected poems, you are probably preparing your volume from many files. You may (or may not) wish to subdivide your edition by the original volumes. Or you may subdivide by year, or by the significant phases of the poet’s career. One way to keep in control of the process is to create a driver file, which calls all the appropriate .sty files and sets the variables globally, and then read in the sections of the edition using `\input`. Here is a version of the driver file I used for *The Collected Poems of Robert Penn Warren*:

```
\documentclass[10pt,twoside]{article}
\usepackage{fancyhdr,kdgree,kmakeidx,times,multicol,geometry,}
\usepackage{keyval,ifthen,mparhack,manyfoot,poemscoll}
\begin{document}
\leftheader{The Collected Poems of Robert Penn Warren}
\makeexplanatorynotes
\makeemendations
\maketextnotes
\makepoemcontents
\makeverselinenumbers
\global\indexingontrue
\global\includeaccidentalstrue
\global\includetypescriptstrue
\input maintitle.tex
```

```

\input poems1922_1943.tex
\input thirtysix.tex
\input eleven.tex
\input sp43.tex
\input promises1.tex
\input promises2.tex
\input promises3.tex
\input yeo1.tex
\input yeo2.tex
\input yeo3.tex
\input tale1.tex
\input tale2.tex
\input incarnations.tex
\input audubon.tex
\input orelse1.tex
\input orelse2.tex
\input arcturus.tex
\input nowthen.tex
\input beinghere.tex
\input rumor1.tex
\input rumor2.tex
\input cj1.tex
\input cj2.tex
\input altitudes.tex
\input poems1943_1989.tex
\input introduction.tex
\finish

```

## 19 A sample poem markup

Here is a poem Robert Penn Warren wrote in his first volume, *Thirty-Six Poems* (1935). The poem is the first poem of his sequence “Kentucky Mountain Farm.” I include the over-title, to demonstrate how to mark up such cases.

```

\sequencetitle{Kentucky Mountain Farm}
\index{Kentucky Mountain Farm@{\em Kentucky Mountain Farm\}}
\sources{Text: TSP. Variants: SP43, SP66 (Deletes ‘‘The Cardinal,’’ ‘‘The
Jay,’’ and ‘‘Watershed’’), SP75 (Same sections as SP66), SP85 (Restores
‘‘Watershed’’), {\em Helsinki\}} (includes only ‘‘Rebuke of
the Rocks’’ and
‘‘At the Hour of the Breaking of the Rocks’’).
‘‘The Owl’’ (above) was marked as a section of ‘‘Kentucky
Mountain Farm’’ when it first appeared in {\em Poetry,\}} but it was never
included in any book version of the entire sequence. The sequence in {\em
Poetry\}} included, in this order, ‘‘The Owl,’’ ‘‘The Cardinal,’’ and
‘‘Watershed.’’ TSP uses lower case Roman numerals in the section
titles. The typescript drafts in the Beinecke Library do not seem to
be setting copies.}

```

```

\sequencefirstsectiontitle{I. Rebuke of the Rocks}
\index{Rebuke of the Rocks@\em Rebuke of the Rocks\}
\sources{Text: TSP. Variants: {\em Nation\}, 11 Jan.\ 1928,
p.~47, {\em Literary
Digest,\} 28 Jan.\ 1928, p.~32, {\em Vanderbilt Masquerader,\} 10
(Dec.\ 1933), p.~16, SP43, SP66, SP75, SP85, {\em Helsinki\},
Broadside: The Press at Colorado College, printed on paper handmade by
Thomas Leech for the American Poetry Society, April~26, 1985. This
poem was not included in SP85 until the second set of galleys, in
which a photocopy of the SP75 text is a stapled insert.}
\begin{poem}
\begin{stanza}
Now on you is the hungry equinox,\verseline
\index{Now on you is the hungry equinox}
O little stubborn people of the hill,\verseline
\accidental{hill,] \sameword--- {\em Nation,\} {\em Literary Digest\}
\sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\} (I include the reading
from {\em Vanderbilt\}
even though it is the same as in TSP, because
{\em Vanderbilt\} was published
after the other magazine versions but before TSP.))}
The season of the obscene moon whose pull\verseline
Disturbs the sod, the rabbit, the lank fox,\verseline
Moving the waters, the boar's dull blood,\verseline
And the acrid sap of the ironwood.\end{stanza}

\begin{stanza}
But breed no tender thing among the rocks.\verseline
Rocks are too old under the mad moon,\verseline
\accidental{old\missingpunct] \sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\}}
Renouncing passion by the strength that locks\verseline
The eternal agony of fire in stone.\end{stanza}

\begin{stanza}
Then quit yourselves as stone and cease\verseline
\accidental{stone\missingpunct] \sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\}}
To break the weary stubble-field for seed;\verseline
Let not the naked cattle bear increase,\verseline
Let barley wither and the bright milkweed.\verseline
\accidental{milkweed.] milk-weed. {\em Vanderbilt\}}
Instruct the heart, lean men, of a rocky place\verseline
That even the little flesh and fevered bone\verseline
May keep the sweet sterility of stone.\end{stanza}
\end{poem}

```

## 20 A sample divider page

```

\begin{volumetitlepage}

\volume{title}{Being Here}
\volumeheader{Being Here}
\volumesubtitle{Poetry 1977--1980}
\volume{dedication}{To Gabriel Thomas Penn\\
(1836--1920)}
\bigskip

\volume{epigraph}{OLD MAN: You get old and you can't do anybody
any good any more.\\
BOY: You do me some good, Grandpa. You
tell me things.}

\bigskip

\volume{epigraph}{There is in short no absolute time standard.}
\volume{attribution}{\em Van Nostrand's Scientific Encyclopedia,\\
Fifth Edition, p. 2203}

\bigskip

\volume{epigraph}{I thirst to know the power and nature of Time\ldots.}
\volume{attribution}{St.\ Augustine: {\em Confessions,\\}
Book {\em XI,\\} Chapter {\em XXIII\\}
Translated by Albert C. Outler}

\bigskip

\volume{epigraph}{Time is the dimension in which God
strives to define His own Being.}

\sources{The typescript material in the Beinecke Library
indicates that this
book went through many drafts, and some rethinking about what to
include and how to order the poems. Until a late stage of
production---very late, since the typescript includes a designed
mock-up of the proposed title page---the title of this volume was {\em
Life is a Fable.\\} Indeed, as late as the time the book was set in
galley it was called {\em Life is a Fable\\}, although the title was
corrected on the galley. Like {\em Now and Then\\}, the typescript
was assembled from photocopies of re-typed copies of poems made after
their magazine appearance, with annotations giving the name of the
magazine in which they occurred. Unlike {\em Now and Then\\}, the
typescript seems to have been typed in one piece, and the annotations
added for the convenience of the permissions department at
Random House. The page numbers have been added---presumably

```

later---in blue pen. The copy is marked up in Warren's hand in black pencil, and in another hand in red pencil. (Unless marked otherwise, all of the mark-up described here is in black pencil.) \tsentry{Like most Warren typescripts BHTS is single-spaced. The dedication to Gabriel Thomas Penn and the dialogue between the old man and the boy appeared on a separate page, and the three epigraphs appeared on another separate page. BHTS gives 1838 as the year of Gabriel Thomas Penn's birth (the error is corrected on the galleys). In the quotation from Augustine, the second word is corrected to "thirst" from "yearn," and the translator's name is added in pencil, not in Warren's handwriting.} In one of Warren's own copies at Western Kentucky University, he has corrected the date of Gabriel Thomas Penn's birth to 1837 (copy 310). Some revisions in this book may have come very late indeed. A letter to Erskine of January 28, 1980, refers to changes made in a bound manuscript that Warren kept after returning the copy-edited typescripts. There are revisions not only on the galleys, but also on the page proofs. There are even some corrections on the "blues" for this volume, including some new copy on a card referred to in a note on the cover of the "blues" but now lost. The Secker and Warburg London edition is, except for the title page, printed from the American plates. There is a copy of this book, marked up by Warren with proposed revisions for Stuart Wright's use on May 25, 1987, in the Special Collections Department of the Emory University Library. I quote Warren's notes by permission. Warren has also marked up, slightly, a copy of this book now in the Robert Penn Warren Room of the Library of the Kentucky Museum at Western Kentucky University. I quote that volume too by permission. The setting typescript for the section of SP85 drawn from this volume consisted of taped-in photocopies of passages from BH. Because the revisions for SP85 are sometimes a vexed question, I have indicated where the SP85 revisions are made on SP85TS.}

\sources{Title Page} SP85 omits the dialogue between the old man and the young boy. SP85 capitalizes "time standard" in the quotation from Van Nostrand's Scientific Encyclopedia, and does not capitalize "Time" in the quotation from Augustine.}

\end{volumetitlepage}



## 21 Implementation

### 21.1 Page geometry and crop marks

`\tightgeometry` There's no reason why you should use the page geometry I used in *The Collected Poems of Robert Penn Warren*, and there are many reasons not to. But I include it just to show what is possible. If you issue `\tightgeometry` in your preamble, you will have the geometry I have used. If you issue `\tightleading` you will redefine `\normalsize` and `\small` to use tighter leading. Normal 10 point L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses 12 point leading. Strictly to save money, I redefined `\normalsize` to use 11 point leading. I use the `geometry` package, since it's simpler to figure out. I give my page geometry here chiefly to remind the reader of some important variables that should be kept track of, such as `marginparsep`, which controls the separation of the marginal line numbers from the verse line, `marginparwidth`, which controls how wide the block for the marginal line numbers will be, `headsep`, which controls how far the text will be from the running headers, and `footskip`, which controls how far the last verse line will be from the marker which tells the reader that there is a stanza break at the end of the page (if there is one). I've also set the odd side margin and the even side margin for two-sided printing. Finally, I have set the default handling of page endings to `\raggedbottom`. Verse should always be set with a ragged bottom margin, otherwise L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X will stretch the spaces between stanzas to make the bottom perfectly flush. When you enter prose sections, such as the editor's introduction, you should enter the command `\flushbottom` to make sure that the prose sections have flush page bottoms.

```
1 \newcommand{\tightgeometry}{\geometry{verbose, tmargin= 33pt,
2 textwidth=318.21pt,textheight=550pt,
3 marginparsep=7pt,marginparwidth=10pt,
4 headheight= 15pt,
5 headsep=19pt,
6 footskip=15pt,
7 lmargin=132pt}
8 \setlength{\oddsidemargin}{60pt}
9 \setlength{\evensidemargin}{65.41pt}}
10 \newcommand{\tightleading}{%
11 \makeatletter
12 \renewcommand\normalsize{%
13   \setfontsize\normalsize\@xpt\@xipt
14   \abovedisplayskip 10\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus5\p@
15   \abovedisplayshortskip \z@ \@plus3\p@
16   \belowdisplayshortskip 6\p@ \@plus3\p@ \@minus3\p@
17   \belowdisplayskip \abovedisplayskip
18   \let\@listi\@listI}
19 \makeatother
20 \normalsize
21 \makeatletter
22 \renewcommand\small{%
23   \setfontsize\small\@ixpt{10}%
24   \abovedisplayskip 8.5\p@ \@plus3\p@ \@minus4\p@
```

```

25 \abovedisplayshortskip \z@ \@plus2\p@
26 \belowdisplayshortskip 4\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus2\p@
27 \def\@listi{\leftmargin\leftmargini
28         \topsep 4\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus2\p@
29         \parsep 2\p@ \@plus\p@ \@minus\p@
30         \itemsep \parsep}%
31 \belowdisplayskip \abovedisplayskip
32 }
33 \makeatother}
34
35

```

### 21.1.1 Internal font size commands

You will probably never need to use these font commands explicitly. I defined these for internal use within `poemscol`, so that a command will always call the same fonts.

As a way of making global changes to repeated features I have defined various special fonts for special purposes. For instance, in a Collected Poems in which the poems are arranged by volume, with divider pages for the beginning of each volume, the first command sets the font for the volume title on the divider page, using the default font family, setting it in 18 point type on 23 point leading. The second command, as the name of the command indicates, sets the font for the subtitle of the volume to be 14 point type on 18 point leading. You can change these either by changing the values in your (renamed) style file, or by using `\renewcommand`. For instance, you can change the font parameters for the font for setting poem titles from 14 on 18 to 12 on 14 by issuing `\renewcommand{\poemtitlefont}{\fontsize{12}{14}\selectfont}` in your preamble. Notice that there are special fonts for titles in the back matter and in the table of contents as well.

```

36 \newcommand{\volumetitlefont}{\fontsize{18}{23}\selectfont}
37 \newcommand{\volumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{14}{18}\selectfont}
38 \newcommand{\poemtitlefont}{\fontsize{14}{18}\selectfont}
39 \newcommand{\sequencetitlefont}{\fontsize{16}{20}\selectfont}
40 \newcommand{\subsectionfont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
41 \newcommand{\backmatterheaderfont}{\fontsize{16}{20}\selectfont}
42 \newcommand{\volumetitlesink}{\leavevmode\vspace{23.5pt}}
43 \newcommand{\backmattersink}{\leavevmode\vspace{21.5pt}}
44 \newcommand{\backmatterafterheadersink}{\leavevmode\vspace{11pt}}
45 \newcommand{\backmattertextfont}{\small}
46 \newcommand{\backmatterintrofont}{\normalsize}
47 \newcommand{\backmattervolumefont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
48 \newcommand{\backmattervolumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{11}{13}\selectfont}
49 \newcommand{\contentsvolumefont}{\fontsize{14}{20}\selectfont}
50 \newcommand{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
51 \newcommand{\contentssequencetitlefont}{\fontsize{10}{14}\selectfont}
52 \newcommand{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\fontsize{10}{14}\selectfont}

```

## 21.2 Miscellaneous dimensions and constants

`poemscol` sets relatively large penalties for widows and clubs, both in the main text, and in the notes sections. There are also special penalties after volume titles in the notes sections, since one does not want to leave a volume title in the notes sections stranded at the bottom of a page. (Setting penalties may not automatically solve all the problems, however. You can fix an intractable widow problem in the contents or in the notes sections by issuing `\literalcontents{\pagebreak}` or `\literalemend{\pagebreak}` just before you issue the `\poemtitle{}` or `\volumetitle{}` that resulted in the problematic title line.) `poemscol` also manipulates penalties for places like the space between a poem's title and its first line. It defines special values for the white space before and after poems and for the amount of a stanza break. `\contentsindentone`, `\contentsindenttwo`, and so on are amounts to indent different hierarchical levels, say of poetic sequences and subsequences, in the table of contents.

```
53 \widowpenalty=300
54 \clubpenalty=300
55 \newcommand{\notespoemclubpenalty}{\penalty-300}
56 \newcommand{\notessequenceclubpenalty}{\penalty-1500}
57 \newcommand{\notesvolumetitlepenalty}{\penalty-1500}
```

Since the right margin of verse is ragged anyway, I allowed some flexibility for slightly longer lines.

```
58 \hfuzz=2pt
```

For explicitly declared indented lines:

```
59 \newcommand{\verseindent}{\hspace{2em}}
```

For multicolumn notes:

```
60 \setlength{\columnsep}{15pt}
```

A hierarchy of indentations for sequence section titles and subsection titles.

```
61 \newdimen\titleindentamount \titleindentamount=1pc
62 \newdimen\titleindenttwoamount \titleindenttwoamount=2pc
63 \newdimen\titleindentthreeamount \titleindentthreeamount=3pc
64 \newcommand{\titleindent}{\hspace{\titleindentamount}}
65 \setlength{\parindent}{\titleindentamount}
```

White space after poem titles, after poems, and after sequence titles.

```
66 \newcommand{\afterpoemtitleskip}{\smallskip}
67 \newcommand{\afterpoemskip}{\bigskip}
68 \newcommand{\aftersequencetitleskip}{\medskip}
```

A little extra white space between stanzas.

```
69 \newcommand{\stanzaskip}{\medskip}
```

A hierarchy of indentations for the table of contents:

```
70 \newdimen\volumetitleshiftamount \volumetitleshiftamount=1pc
71 \newcommand{\volumetitleshift}{\hbox{\hspace{\volumetitleshiftamount}}}
72 \newdimen\voladditionalamount \voladditionalamount=2pc
73 \newdimen\contentsindentoneamount \contentsindentoneamount=24pt
```

```

74 \newcommand{\contentsindentone}{\hspace{\contentsindentoneamount}}
75 \newdimen\contentsindenttwoamount \contentsindenttwoamount=42pt
76 \newcommand{\contentsindenttwo}{\hspace{\contentsindenttwoamount}}
77 \newdimen\contentsindentthreeamount \contentsindentthreeamount=60pt
78 \newcommand{\contentsindentthree}{\hspace{\contentsindentthreeamount}}
79 \newdimen\contentsindentfouramount \contentsindentfouramount=72pt
80 \newcommand{\contentsindentfour}{\hspace{\contentsindentfouramount}}
81 \newdimen\contentsindentfiveamount \contentsindentfiveamount=80pt
82 \newcommand{\contentsindentfive}{\hspace{\contentsindentfiveamount}}

Penalties to encourage page breaks before poem titles, before multi-line poem
titles, and before sequence titles.

83 \newcommand{\poemtitlepenalty}{\penalty-1000}
84 \newcommand{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\penalty-3000}
85 \newcommand{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\penalty-3000}
86 \newcommand{\multilinesequencepenalty}{\penalty-3500}

```

### 21.3 Verse

The verse environment here is taken from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, slightly modified to indent run over lines more. The idea is to distinguish the automatic indentation of run over lines from the explicitly declared indentation of indented lines. You can change the amount of indentation of runover lines with `\runoverindent{}`.

```

87 \def\makeatletter{\catcode'\@=11}
88 \def\makeatother{\catcode'\@=12 }
89 \newcommand{\runoverindent}[1]{\global\edef\runoverindentvalue{#1}
90 }
91 \runoverindent{6em}
92 % pmclverse (runover indented more than it is in the normal verse
93 % environment)
94 % \newenvironment{pmclverse}{%
95 % \let\=\@centercr%
96 % \list{}{\itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue\listparindent \itemindent
97 % \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
98 % \runoverindentvalue}\item[] }
99 % {\endlist}
100 \newif\iflinenumberscenteredwithverse
101 \linenumberscenteredwithversetrue
102 %
103 \newlength{\marginparsepmin}
104 \setlength{\marginparsepmin}{2em}
105 %
106 \newlength{\versemarginadjust}
107 \setlength{\versemarginadjust}{0pt}
108 %
109 \newif\iftextcenteringturnedon
110 \textcenteringturnedontrue
111 %
112 \newcommand{\v@riablemarginpar}{\setlength{\marginparsep}{-\leftmargin}%

```

```

113 \addtolength{\marginparsep}{\marginparsepmin}}
114 %
115 \newcommand{\c@nterverseblock}[1]{\rightmargin \z@%
116 \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%
117 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
118 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
119 \iflinenumberscenteredwithverse\variablemarginpar\fi}
120 \newif\iflastpoemcentered
121 \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
122 \global\lastpoemcenteredfalse
123 \let\=\@centercr%
124 \list{}{\itemsep\z@
125 \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
126 \listparindent \itemindent
127 \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
128 \iftextcenteringturnedon
129 \c@nterverseblock{#1}%
130 \global\lastpoemcenteredtrue
131 \else
132 \rightmargin \leftmargin
133 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}\fi
134 \else
135 \rightmargin \leftmargin
136 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
137 \fi
138 \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
139 \item[]}
140 {\endlist}
141 % next is from 2.88
142 \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
143 \let\=\@centercr%
144 \list{}{\itemsep\z@
145 \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
146 \listparindent \itemindent
147 % \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
148 % \iftextcenteringturnedon
149 % \c@nterverseblock{#1}%
150 % \else
151 % \rightmargin \leftmargin
152 % \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}\fi
153 % \else
154 % \rightmargin \leftmargin
155 % \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
156 % \fi
157 % \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
158 % \item[]}
159 %{\endlist}% from 2.72 with additions
160 \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
161 \let\=\@centercr%
162 \list{}{\itemsep\z@

```

```

163 % \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
164 % \listparindent \itemindent
165 %     \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
166 %         \rightmargin      \z@
167 %         \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%
168 %         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
169 %         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
170 %         \iflinenumberscenteredwithverse
171 %             \setlength{\marginparsep}{-\leftmargin+\marginparsepmin}
172 %         \fi
173 %     \else
174 %         \rightmargin      \leftmargin
175 %         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
176 %     \fi
177 % \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
178 % \item[]}
179 % {\endlist\setlength{\marginparsep}{0pt}} % from email
180
181 % \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
182 % \let\@centercr%
183 % \list{}\itemsep\z@
184 % \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
185 % \listparindent \itemindent
186 %     \iftextcenteringturnedon
187 %         \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
188 %             \rightmargin      \z@
189 %             \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%
190 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
191 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
192 %             \iflinenumberscenteredwithverse\setlength{\marginparsep}{-\leftmargin+\marginparsepmin}\fi
193 %         \else
194 %             \rightmargin      \leftmargin
195 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
196 %         \fi % linewidth
197 %     \else
198 %         \rightmargin      \leftmargin
199 %         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
200 %
201 %         \fi% textcentering
202 % \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
203 % \item[]}
204 % {\endlist\setlength{\marginparsep}{0pt}}% % draft
205
206 % \let\@centercr%
207 % \list{}\itemsep\z@
208 % \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
209 % \listparindent \itemindent
210 %     \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
211 %         \rightmargin      \z@
212 %         \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%

```

```

213 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
214 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
215 %             \else
216 %             \rightmargin \leftmargin
217 %             \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-\versemarginadjust}
218 %             \fi
219 % \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
220 % \item[]
221 % {\endlist} % first version from 2.81
222 % \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
223 % \let\=\@centercr%
224 % \list{}{\itemsep\z@
225 % \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
226 % \listparindent \itemindent
227 % \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
228 % \rightmargin \z@
229 % \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%
230 % \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
231 % \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
232 % \else
233 % \rightmargin \leftmargin
234 % \fi
235 % \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
236 % \item[]
237 % {\endlist}% from 2.72
238 \newif\ifinquotedverse
239 \newenvironment{quotedverse}{%
240 \inquotedversetrue
241 \let\=\@centercr%
242 \list{}{\itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue\listparindent \itemindent
243 \rightmargin 0sp\leftmargin 0sp\advance\leftmargin
244 \runoverindentvalue}\item[]
245 {\endlist\inquotedversefalse}
246 % rfoverse (flushes runover to right) (Just a placeholder now.)
247 % \newif\ifrfv
248 % \rfvfalse
249 % \newcommand{\rightflushrunoververse}{\global\rfvtrue}
250 % \newcommand{\indentrunoververse}{\global\rfvfalse}
251 % \newenvironment{rfoverse}{\begin{pmclverse}}{\end{pmclverse}}
252 % % verse environment with a switch
253 % \renewenvironment{verse}{\ifrfv\begin{rfoverse}\else\begin{pmclverse}\fi}
254 % {\ifrfv\end{rfoverse}\else\end{pmclverse}\fi}

```

## 21.4 Miscellaneous internal counters

`\verselinenumber` is the line number, obviously. `\printlineindex` records how many lines have passed since the last marginal line number was output. `\lineindexrepeat` governs how often the marginal line numbers appear. `\lemmalines` and `\lemmaend` are for setting number ranges for multiline lemmas.

```

255 \newcounter{verselinenumber}
256 \newcounter{printlineindex}
257 \newcounter{verselinenumberscratch}
258 \newcounter{printlineindexscratch}
259 \newcounter{lineindexrepeat} \setcounter{lineindexrepeat}{9}
260 \newcounter{lemmalines}
261 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}
262 \newcounter{lemmaend}
263 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}

```

This next counter is used to make labels for each poem for the contents and notes sections.

```

264 \newcounter{poemnumber}
265 \setcounter{poemnumber}{1}

```

These next two are used to set the page numbers in the running headers of the various notes sections, which are of the form “Textual notes to pp. xx–yy.”

```

266 \newcounter{notepageholdertitle} \setcounter{notepageholdertitle}{1}
267 \newcounter{notepageholdernote} \setcounter{notepageholdernote}{1}

```

## 21.5 Miscellaneous token lists

Since the explanatory notes section and the emendations section should only open an entry for poems for which there actually are explanatory notes or emendations, the current are held in token lists in case they are needed. `\titlesofar` and `\titleincrement` are used to concatenate multi-line titles.

```

268 \newtoks{\fulltitleholder}
269 \newtoks{\titlesofar}
270 \newtoks{\titleincrement}

```

## 21.6 Miscellaneous booleans

Most of these have self-explanatory names.

```

271 \newif\ifistanza
272 \newif\ifinpoem
273 \newif\ifpoemcontentson
274 \newif\iftextnoteson
275 \newif\ifverselinenumbers
276 \newif\ifexplanon
277 \newif\ifemendationson
278 \global\verselinenumberstrue
279 \newif\ifindexingon
280 \global\indexingontrue
281 \ifindexingon
282 \makeindex
283 \fi
284 \newif\ifincludeaccidentals
285 \global\includeaccidentalstrue
286 \newif\ifincludetypescripts

```



```

287 \global\includetypescriptstrue
288 \newif\ifredundantemendations
289 \global\redundantemendationsfalse
290 \newif\ifnoemendyet
291 \newif\ifnoexplainyet
292 \global\noemendyettrue
293 \global\noexplainyettrue
294 \newif{\ifmiddlecontentsline}
295 \middlecontentslinefalse
296 \newif{\iflastcontentsline}
297 \lastcontentslinefalse
298 \newif{\ifputpagenumberincontents}
299 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
300 \newif{\ifputpagenumberinnotes}
301 \putpagenumberinnotestrue
302 \newif{\ifsinglelinetitle}
303 \singlelinetitletrue
304 \newif{\iftitlefirstline}
305 \titlefirstlinefalse
306 \newif{\iftitlemiddleline}
307 \titlemiddlelinefalse
308 \newif{\iftitlelastline}
309 \titlelastlinefalse
310 \newif{\ifverserightflush}
311 \verserightflushfalse
312 \newif\ifrangelemma
313 \rangelemmafalse
314 \newcommand{\makeverselinenumbers}{\global\verselinenumberstrue}
315 \let\makelinenumbers=\makeverselinenumbers% for compatibility
316 \newif\iftextnotesatend
317 \textnotesatendtrue
318 \newif\ifemendationsatend
319 \emendationsatendtrue
320 \newif\ifexplanatend
321 \explanatendtrue
322 \newif\iftextfootnotespara
323 \textfootnotesparatrue
324 \newif\ifsourcesfootnotespara
325 \sourcesfootnotesparafalse
326 \newif\ifemendationfootnotespara
327 \emendationfootnotesparatrue
328 \newif\ifexplanfootnotespara
329 \explanfootnotesparafalse

```

## 21.7 Defining page styles

These define several special page styles. To use them you must have the `fancyhdr` package installed. First, the default running headers: the right side (`\volumeheader`) is the title of the volume in a multivolume edition, and the

left (`\lefthead`) is the title of the general collection.

`\volumeheader`

```
330 \newcommand{\volumeheader}[1]{\global\edef\volumeheadervalue{#1}
331 }
```

`\lefthead`

```
332 \newcommand{\lefthead}[1]{\global\edef\leftheadervalue{#1}
333 }
334 \lefthead{\relax}
335 \volumeheader{\relax}
336 \newcommand{\righthead}[1]{\volumeheader{#1}}
```

The default page style. Note the use of the mark mechanism to keep track of cases where the stanza breaks and page breaks overlap.

`\pagestylefancy`

```
337 \newlength{\headoffsetlength}
338 \setlength{\headoffsetlength}{-1sp}
339 %\addtolength{\headoffsetlength}{\parindent}
340 \raggedbottom
341 \pagestyle{fancy}
342 \fancyhead{}
343 \fancyfoot{}
344 \fancyhfoffset[RO,LE]{\headoffsetlength}
345 \fancyhead[RO]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
346 \fancyhead[LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
347 \fancyhead[CO]{\hfil\small{\em \volumeheadervalue}\hfil}
348 \fancyhead[CE]{\hfil\small{\em \leftheadervalue}\hfil}
349 \fancyfoot[CE]{\small \botmark}\hfil}
350 \fancyfoot[CO]{\hfil\small \botmark}}
351 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
352 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
```

`\pagestylemain`

```
353 \fancypagestyle{main}{%
354 \fancyhead{}
355 \fancyfoot{}
356 \fancyhfoffset[RO,LE]{\headoffsetlength}
357 \fancyhead[RO]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
358 \fancyhead[LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
359 \fancyhead[CO]{\hfil\small{\em \volumeheadervalue}\hfil}
360 \fancyhead[CE]{\hfil\small{\em \leftheadervalue}\hfil}
361 \fancyfoot[CE]{\small \botmark}\hfil}
362 \fancyfoot[CO]{\hfil\small \botmark}}
363 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
364 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
365 }
```

Style for the first page of every volume in a Collected Poems. You don't have to call this style explicitly. It is called by the `\volumetitlepage` environment. But of course if you want to change the style of those pages, you should do it here.

`volumefirststyle`

```
366 \fancypagestyle{volumefirststyle}{%
367 \fancyhf{}
368 \fancyfoot[C]{\hfil{\small \botmark}\hfil}
369 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
370 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
371 }
```

Style for plain pages.

`plain`

```
372 \fancypagestyle{plain}{%
373 \fancyhf{}
374 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
375 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
376 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
377 }
```

Style for long poems.

`\myversemarks`

```
378 \newtoks{\singlelineabbrev}
379 \singlelineabbrev={1.\ }
380 \newcommand{\changesinglelineabbrev}[1]{\singlelineabbrev={#1}}
381 \newtoks{\multiplelineabbrev}
382 \newcommand{\changemultiplelineabbrev}[1]{\multiplelineabbrev={#1}}
383 \multiplelineabbrev{11.\ }
384 \newcommand{\myversemarks}{%
385   \ifthenelse{equal{\thefirstmarks{verselinemark}}{\thebotmarks{verselinemark}}}%
386     {\unskip ~\the\singlelineabbrev~\thefirstmarks{verselinemark}}% if equal
387 {\unskip ~\the\multiplelineabbrev\thefirstmarks{verselinemark}--\thebotmarks{verselinemark}}} %
```

`longpoem`

```
388 \fancypagestyle{longpoem}{%
389 \fancyhead{}
390 \fancyfoot{}
391 \fancyhfoffset[RO,LE]{\headoffsetlength}
392 \fancyhead[RO]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
393 \fancyhead[LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
394 \fancyhead[CO]{\hfil{\small{\em \leftheadvalue ~ \myversemarks}}\hfil}
395 \fancyhead[CE]{\hfil{\small{\em \volumeheadvalue ~ \myversemarks}}\hfil}
396 \fancyfoot[CE]{\small \botmark}\hfil}
397 \fancyfoot[CO]{\hfil{\small \botmark}}
398 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
399 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
400 }
```

Style for divider pages between volumes

`volumetitlestyle`

```
401 \fancypagestyle{volumetitlestyle}{%
402 \fancyhf{}
403 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
404 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
405 }
```

`\resetpagestyle` `\resetpagestyle` restores the fancy page style of the main sections of the book. `\putpoemcontents` changes the fancy page style, and `\resetpagestyle`, which is called by `\putpoemcontents` as it finishes, restores the original style

```
406 \newcommand{\resetpagestyle}{\pagestyle{main}
407 % \fancyhead{}
408 % \fancyfoot{}
409 % \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
410 % \fancyhead[CO]{\hfil\small{\em \volumeheadervalue}}
411 % \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \leftheadervalue}\hfil}
412 % \fancyfoot[CE]{\small \botmark}\hfil}
413 % \fancyfoot[CO]{\hfil\small \botmark}}
414 % \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
415 % \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
416 }
```

`\clearempydoublepage` This macro is useful for making sure that the verso of a title page is blank.

```
417 \newcommand{\clearempydoublepage}{\newpage{\pagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage}}
418 %
```

`\mymarks` Here the marks mechanism keeps track of pages from which notes come. Marks are used different in the notes sections and in the body of the volume. In the body, they are used to keep track of cases where a stanza break falls on a page break. In the notes sections, they set the running headers.

```
419 \newtoks{\singlepageabbrev}
420 \singlepageabbrev={p.}
421 \newcommand{\changesinglepageabbrev}[1]{\singlepageabbrev={#1}}
422 \newtoks{\multiplepageabbrev}
423 \newcommand{\changemultiplepageabbrev}[1]{\multiplepageabbrev={#1}}
424 \multiplepageabbrev{pp.}
425 \newcommand{\mymarks}{%
426   \ifthenelse{\equal{\firstmark}{\botmark}}{%
427     {\unskip ~\the\singlepageabbrev~\firstmark}% if equal
428     {\unskip ~\the\multiplepageabbrev~\firstmark--\botmark}}%if not equal
429 \newcommand{\poemdotfill}{\dotfill}
```

## 21.8 Environments: poem, and stanza

Here are definitions of the poem and stanza environments, and of the `\verseline` and `\stanzalinestraddle` macros.

**stanza** Page breaks are slightly encouraged in stanza breaks. Notice that entering a stanza sets the mark to `\relax` and leaving it sets the mark to `*` (the default value of `\stanzaatbottom`). If you want to use some other symbol for this purpose, use `\stanzaatbottom{}` or `\nostanzaatbottom{}` (if you also want to mark cases where there is *no* stanza break at the bottom of the page) to change it.

```

430 \newenvironment{stanza}{\penalty-100\instanzatrue\mark{\nostanzaatbottomvalue\ }}
431 {\nobreak\mark{\stanzaatbottomvalue\ }\nobreak\ifspeciallinelock%
432 \relax\else%
433 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenumber%
434 \fi%
435 \speciallinelockfalse%
436 \nobreak
437 \instanzafalse
438
439 \stanzaskip
440 }
441
442 \newenvironment{marginenvironment}{}{}
443 \newcommand{\stanzalinestraddle}
444     {\begin{stanza}\addtocounter{verselinenumber}{-1}%
445      \addtocounter{printlineindex}{-1}%
446      }

```

The next two environments are for contents entries and titles. The idea is to handle overrun titles the way overrun lines are handled in verse. Contents entries indent the overrun slightly. Titles do not indent the overrun relative to the first line, but preserve the indentation of that line.

```

447 \newlength{\contentsentryoverrun}
448 \setlength{\contentsentryoverrun}{\contentsindentoneamount}
449 \newenvironment{contentsentryenvironment}{%
450 \language=255%no hyphenation in contents
451 \let\=\@centercr%
452 \list{}{\topsep\z@%
453 \partopsep\z@%
454 \itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\contentsentryoverrun\listparindent \itemindent
455     \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
456     \contentsentryoverrun}\item[]{}\endlist}
457 \newlength{\titleentryoverrun}
458 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}
459 \newenvironment{titleentryenvironment}{%
460 \language=255%no hyphenation in poem titles
461 \let\=\@centercr%
462 \list{}{\topsep\z@%
463 \partopsep\z@%
464 \itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\titleentryoverrun\listparindent \itemindent
465     \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
466     \titleentryoverrun}\item[]{}\endlist}

```

The poem environment. The little trick about setting the language number is designed to suppress automatic hyphenation in the poem environment. The booleans

tell the `\emendation{}` and `\explanatory{}` macros that there have not yet been emendations or explanatory notes for this poem. The little trick with `\mark` sets the value of `\mark` to the current value of `\stanzaatbottom` (by default `*`) if the current location is in a poem but not in a stanza (which is to say, in a stanza break). The `\pagestyle` for poetry sets the value of `\mark` in the footer, which is `*` if the page break happens at a stanza break, and `\relax` if the page break happens anywhere else.

poem

```

467 % \newenvironment{poem}{\raggedright%
468 %     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
469 %     \noemendyettrue%
470 %     \noexplainyettrue%
471 %     \setcounter{verselinenum}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
472 %     \nobreak\begin{verse}%
473 %     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}%
474 %     }\end{verse}%
475 %     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}%
476 %     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
477 %     }
478 \newlength{\versewidth}
479 \newenvironment{poem}[1][\linewidth]
480 {\raggedright%
481     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
482     \noemendyettrue%
483     \noexplainyettrue%
484     \setcounter{verselinenum}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
485     \nobreak\begin{pmclverse}[#1]%
486     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}%
487     }\end{pmclverse}%
488     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}%
489     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
490 }
```

**rightflushverse** Sets verse with the runover portions of long lines flushed to the right. Each line must begin with `\rightversebegin`. This code was suggested to me by Mark Wooding on comp.text.tex, who describes the code as “very unpleasant.”

```

491 \newenvironment{rightflushverse}{\let\oldleftskip=\leftskip%
492 \leftskip=1 \leftskip\advance\leftskip by 0pt plus 1fill}%
493 {\let\leftskip=\oldleftskip}
```

## 21.9 Environments: main title page, divider pages

Environments for the main title page, and for the divider pages for individual volumes in a Collected Poems.

volumetitlepage

```

maintitlepage 494 \newenvironment{volumetitlepage}
booksectionpage 495 {\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
```

```

496 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
497     {\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
498 \cleardoublepage\thispagestyle{volumefirststyle}}
499 \newenvironment{maintitlepage}
500 {\par\cleardoublepage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
501 }{\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
502 \newenvironment{booksectionpage}
503 {\par\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}{\newpage}

```

## 21.10 Marginal line numbers, verse lines, line cross references, etc.

The default is that the line numbers are on the left side, and that the `\marginparsep` is 18pt. If you use `\pmcleftsidepar` the placement of the number is controlled by `\marginparsep` and `\marginparwidth`. You should experiment with different values until you find a set that suits you. A rule of thumb for me is that the `\marginparsep` if the numbers is on the right should be the negative of the value if it is on the left. First, some lengths and ifs:

```

504 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}
505 \setlength{\marginparwidth}{18pt}
506 \newif\ifnumbersswitch \numbersswitchfalse
507 \newif\ifnumbersright \numbersrightfalse

```

Next, code for `\pmclsidepar`, taken from the memoir class, by Peter Wilson. Modified by Dan Luecking.

`\pmclsidepar`

```

508 \newcommand{\pmclsidepar}{\@dblarg{\@pmclsidepar}}
509 %\long\def\@pmclsidepar[#1]#2{\@bsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
510 \long\def\@pmclsidepar[#1]#2{\@bsphack\strut\vadjust{% added
511 \checkoddpag
512 \ifpmclsideparswitch
513 \ifpmclreversesidepar
514 \ifoddpag
515 \oddpagfalse
516 \else
517 \oddpagtrue
518 \fi
519 \fi
520 \else
521 \oddpagtrue
522 \ifpmclreversesidepar
523 \oddpagfalse
524 \fi
525 \fi
526 \rlap{\kern-\parindent
527 \if@twocolumn
528 \if@firstcolumn % put at left
529 \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left

```

```

530     \else                % put at right
531     \kern \columnwidth \kern \marginparsep % at right
532     \fi
533   \else
534     \ifoddpage            % put at right
535     \kern \textwidth \kern \marginparsep % at right
536     \else                % put at left
537     \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left
538     \fi
539   \fi
540 %   \vbox to Opt{%
541 %     \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
542 %     \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
543 %     \setbox0=\vtop to Opt{% added
544 %     \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
545 %     \ifoddpage #2\else #1\fi%
546 %     \end{minipage}%
547 %   \vss}}\@esphack}
548 \vss}% added
549 \vtop to Opt{\kern\pmclsideparvshift % default should be Opt
550 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}\@esphack}% added
551
552

```

`\thepmemc@page` The value of the page counter.

```

553 \gdef\thepmemc@page{\the\c@page}
554

```

`\pmemlabel` A version of `\label` that uses `\pmemprotected@write`.

```

555 \providecommand{\pmemlabel}[1]{\@bsphack
556   \pmemprotected@write\@auxout{%
557     {\string\newpmemlabel{#1}{\thepmemc@page}}%
558   \@esphack}

```

`\pmemprotected@write` `\pmemprotected@write` is a modified version of the kernel's `\protected@write`.

```

559 \long\def\pmemprotected@write#1#2#3{%
560   \begingroup
561   \let\thepmemc@page\relax
562   #2%
563   \let\protect\@unexpandable@protect
564   \edef\reserved@a{\write#1{#3}}%
565   \reserved@a
566   \endgroup
567   \if@nobreak\ifvmode\nobreak\fi\fi}
568

```

`\newpmemlabel` We have to be able to cope with a particular label not (yet) being in the the aux file when we come to check the page number.

```

569 \providecommand{\newpmemlabel}[2]{\global\@namedef{m@#1}{#2}}

```



```

570 \providecommand{\pmemlabelref}[1]{%
571   \expandafter\ifx\csname m@#1\endcsname\relax
572     0%
573   \else
574     \csname m@#1\endcsname
575   \fi}
576

```

`\@memcnta` We need a scratch count register.

```

577 \newcount\@memcnta

```

`\checkoddpager` This is the user level command to check for odd/even page. It does a robust check for `\strictpagecheck` otherwise the simple minded check. It sets `\ifoddpager` to TRUE if the page is odd, otherwise it sets it to FALSE.

This is now fixed so that it should work for non-arabic page numbering. It uses a new label/pageref variant based on the page counter value, not its printed representation. This also gets rid of worrying about hyperref!! The problem was discovered by Bastiaan Niels Veelo

```

578 \DeclareRobustCommand{\checkoddpager}{%
579   \oddpagerfalse%
580   \ifstrictpagecheck%
581     \stepcounter{cp@cnter}\pmemlabel{\cplabel\thecp@cnter}%
582     \@memcnta=\pmemlabelref{\cplabel\thecp@cnter}\relax
583     \ifodd\@memcnta\oddpagetrue\fi
584   \else
585     \ifodd\c@page\oddpagetrue\fi
586   \fi}
587

```

`\ifpmclreversesidepar` Analogues of `\marginpar` controls.

```

\ifpmclsideparswitch 588 \newif\ifpmclreversesidepar
589 % \pmclreversesideparfalse
590 \pmclreversesidepartrue
591 \newif\ifpmclsideparswitch
592 \pmclsideparswitchfalse
593 \if@twoside \pmclsideparswitchtrue \fi
594

```

`\ifoddpager` The boolean `\ifoddpager` is TRUE if the checked page is odd. The boolean `\ifstrictpagecheck` is for turning on (TRUE) and off (FALSE) the strictest method of page checking. The counter `cp@cnter` is used to make unique labels, `\cplabel` which start with `\cplabel`.

```

595 \newif\ifoddpager
596 \newif\ifstrictpagecheck
597 \strictpagecheckfalse
598 \newcounter{cp@cnter}
599 \newcommand{\cplabel}{^_}

```

Two-column and one-column printing is again realized via a switch which is defined in the kernel. The default is single column printing.

`\pmclsideparvshift` Vertical shift for sidepar to align with text line

```
600 \newlength{\pmclsideparvshift}
601 % \setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{-2.08ex}% seems to work for all font sizes
602 %\setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{-2.58ex}
603 \setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{0ex}
```

My code resumes here

`\verselinenumberstoleft`

```
\verselinenumberstoright 604 \newcommand{\verselinenumberstoleft}{%
605 % \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
606 % \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
607 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrightfalse}
608 \newcommand{\verselinenumberstoright}{%
609 % \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
610 % \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
611 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrighttrue}
```

`\verselinenumbersswitch`

```
\verselinenumbersgutter 612 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersswitch}{%
\verselinenumbersouter 613 \strictpagechecktrue%
614 % \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
615 % \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
616 \numbersswitchtrue\numbersrightfalse\pmclsideparswitchtrue}
617 \newif\ifnumbersgutter \numbersgutterfalse%
618 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersgutter}{\verselinenumbersswitch%
619 \pmclreversesideparfalse%
620 \numbersguttertrue%
621 }
622 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersouter}{\verselinenumbersswitch%
623 \pmclreversesidepartrue%
624 \numbersgutterfalse}
```

`\putverselinenumber`

```
625 \newcommand{\putverselinenumber}{\nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}%
626 \nolinebreak%
627 % \ifnumbersswitch\marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}%
628 % \else%
629 % \ifnumbersright\marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}%
630 % \else%
631 % \marginpar{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}\hfil}%
632 % \fi%
633 % \fi
634 \ifnumbersswitch\pmclsidepar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}%
635 \else%
636 \ifnumbersright\pmclrightsipar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}%
```

```

637         \else%
638         \pmcleftsidepar
639 {\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenum}\hfil}%
640         \fi%
641     \fi%
642 % \marn{\hfil\textrm{\theverselinenum}}
643 % \marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenum}}
644 % \linenumberside{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenum}\hfil}
645 % \pmcrightsidepar{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenum}}
646 \nolinebreak%
647 \end{marginenvironment}%
648 \nolinebreak%
649 }

```

**\verseline**

```

650 \newif\ifspeciallinelock
651 \speciallinelockfalse
652 \newcommand{\verseline}{\ifspeciallinelock%
653 \relax\else%
654 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenum%
655 \fi%
656 \speciallinelockfalse%
657 \nolinebreak\\
658 }
659 % \newif\iflongpoemon
660 % \longpoemonfalse
661 \newcommand{\incrementverselinenum}{%
662 \nolinebreak\addtocounter{verselinenum}{1}%
663 %\iflongpoemon\marksthe{verselinemark}{\theverselinenum}\fi%
664 \makeatletter
665 \@ifundefined{marksthe}{\relax}{\marksthe{verselinemark}{\theverselinenum}}
666 \makeatother
667 \addtocounter{printlineindex}{1}%
668 \ifnum\theprintlineindex>\thelineindexrepeat%
669     \ifverselinenumbers\nobreak%
670     \putverselinenum\nobreak%
671     \fi\nobreak%
672 \setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
673 \fi%
674 }
675 \newcommand{\setverselinemodulo}[1]{%
676 \setcounter{lineindexrepeat}{#1}%
677 \addtocounter{lineindexrepeat}{-1}%
678 }

```

**\linebend** A linebend is a normal linebreak from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, with no incrementing of the line number counter, but the indentation makes the line look like a run over line. If you change the value of the run over in the definition of the **\verse** environment, be sure to change it here too. **\linebend** should be used for tweaking how poemscol

runs over long lines.

```
679 \newcommand{\linebend}{\\
680 \hspace{\runoverindentvalue}%
681 }
```

`\saveverselinenumber` and `\restoreverselinenumber` are useful for setting prose interjections in the midst of poems.

```
\saveverselinenumber
\restoreverselinenumber 682 \newcommand{\saveverselinenumber}{\setcounter{verselinenumberscratch}%
683     {\value{verselinenumber}}}%
684     \setcounter{printlineindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}
685 \newcommand{\restoreverselinenumber}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}%
686     {\value{verselinenumberscratch}}}%
687     \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{printlineindexscratch}}}
```

`\rightversebegin` By default, `poemscol` indents the runover portion of long lines by the amount `\runoverindent` (by default 6 em). It is possible to set verse so that the runover portion is flushed to the right margin. To do this, you should enclose the `\poem` environment in the `\rightflushverse` environment. And you must mark the beginning of each verse line with `\rightversebegin`

```
688 \newcommand{\rightversebegin}
689 {\leavevmode\nobreak\hskip0pt plus -1fill\ignorespaces}
```

`\hour` `\hour{}` is useful for typesetting the AM and the PM in the time.

```
690 \newcommand{\hour}[1]{\textsc{#1}}\ $!\!\\!$}
691 }
```

`\brokenline` `\brokenline` and `\versephantom{}` are a pair, useful for setting cases where there is a line break in the midst of a single metrical line. `\tweakbrokenline` ensures that the line number will mark the first partial line if the line numbers are on the left, the last partial line if the line numbers are on the right. If you have issued `\tweakbrokenline` in your preamble, the setting of runover lines may not be consistent with the setting of broken lines, because the line number will be set on the level of the end of the line. This is not a problem if the line numbers are set on the right, but it may look odd if the numbers are set on the left. `\startverseline` will ensure that the line number marks the beginning of any line it begins. If you put `\startverseline` at the beginning of the runover lines, it will ensure that the line number marks the beginning, not the end, of the line. If you wish `\startverseline` to align the number with the beginning of runover lines when the line number is on the left, and with the end of runover lines when the line number is on the right, issue `\tweakstartverseline` in your preamble.

```
692 \newcommand{\brokenline}{\\}
693 \newcommand{\versephantom}[1]{\leavevmode\phantom{#1}}
```

`\tweakbrokenline` Causes `\brokenline` to set the line number level with the beginning of the line if the number is on the left, level with the end of the line if the number is on the right. Issue it in the preamble.

```

694 \newcommand{\tweakbrokenline}{%
695   \renewcommand{\brokenline}{\ifnumbersswitch\relax%
696     \ifnumbersgutter% shift on odd pages for gutter numbers
697     \ifodd\c@page \relax \else \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber\fi
698     \else % shift on even pages for outer numbers
699     \ifodd\c@page \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber \fi
700   \fi
701   \else \ifnumbersright \relax%
702     \else \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber%
703   \fi%
704 \fi%
705 \}
706 }

```

**\brokenlineatbeginning** Issue `\brokenlineatbeginning` if you want broken line to set the line number level with the beginning of the line, regardless of whether the line number is at the right or at the left

```

707 \newcommand{\brokenlineatbeginning}{%
708   \renewcommand{\brokenline}{%
709     \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber%
710   }
711 }
712 }

```

**\startverseline** Put `\startverseline` at the beginning of every line where you wish to ensure that the line number is level with the beginning of the line. This is particularly useful for overrun lines when `\tweakbrokenline` or `\brokenlineatbeginning` is in effect.

```

713 \newcommand{\startverseline}{%
714   \speciallineclocktrue%
715   \leavevmode%
716   %\kern-3pt
717   \incrementverselinenumber%
718 }

```

**\tweakstartverseline** You may want `\startverseline` to align the line number with the beginning of the line if the line number is on the left, and with the end of the line if the line number is on the right. To do this, issue `\tweakstartline` in your preamble.

```

719 \newcommand{\tweakstartverseline}{%
720   \renewcommand{\startverseline}{%
721     \leavevmode%
722     \ifnumbersswitch%
723     % gutter case: shift on odd pages to top of runover line
724     \ifnumbersgutter%
725       \ifodd\c@page \relax \else \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber\fi
726     % outer case: shift on even pages to top of runover line
727     \else
728       \ifodd\c@page \speciallineclocktrue\incrementverselinenumber \fi
729     \fi% end of ifnumbersgutter

```

```

730 \else \ifnumbersright \relax% numbers don't switch. Are they to the right?
731       \else \specialline{true}\incrementverselinenumber% or to the left?
732       \fi% end of ifnumbersright
733 \fi% end of ifnumbersswitch
734 }% end of renewcommand
735 }% end of tweakverseline

```

`\poemlinelabel` `\poemlinelabel` is a hacked version of `\label` for crossreferences by line.

```

736 \def\poemlinelabel#1{\@bsphack
737   \protected@write\@auxout{}%
738   {\string\newlabel{#1}{\theverselinenumber}{\thepage}}}%
739 \@esphack
740 }

```

## 21.11 Setup for contents, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes

First, the table of contents:

`\makepoemcontents` An external file is created with the extension `.ctn`, and the filename of your driver file. The channel to that file is called `\poemcontents`. The rest of the command is the page style for the contents section. You will notice the running head Contents, and the title of the Contents section. I am assuming that the table of contents starts on page 5, but it may be different in different books. If you want to change that page number (say, to page 3) without messing with this file, issue `\literalcontents{\setcounter{page}{3}}` just after you issue `\makepoemcontents`. Alternatively, you can issue `\makepoemcontents{}` with its optional argument, putting the page number in the argument.

```

741 \newtoks{\pmclcontentsname}
742 \pmclcontentsname={CONTENTS}
743 \newtoks{\pmclcontentsheader}
744 \pmclcontentsheader={Contents}
745 \newcommand{\changecontentsname}[1]{%
746   \pmclcontentsname={#1}}
747 \newcommand{\changecontentsheader}[1]{%
748   \pmclcontentsheader={#1}}
749 \newcommand{\makepoemcontents}[1][5]{\global\poemcontentsontrue
750   \newwrite\poemcontents
751   \immediate\openout\poemcontents=\jobname.ctn
752   \literalcontents{\flushbottom\normalfont
753     {\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
754     \pagestyle{fancy}\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
755   \pagenumbering{roman}
756   \setcounter{page}{#1}
757   \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
758   \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\pmclcontentsheader}}
759   \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\pmclcontentsheader}}
760   \fancyfoot{}

```

```

761 \backmattersink
762 \begin{center}{\normalfont \backmatterheaderfont
763 \the\pmcclcontentsname}\end{center}
764 \lefthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink\tolerance=500\language=0}
765 \literalcontents{ \relax}}

```

Next, the textual collations:

`\maketextnotes` Like the `\makecontents` macro, `\maketextnotes` opens an external file using `\jobname`, this time with the extension `.ent`. It makes sure that line numbering is on (since it makes no sense to make notes without numbering the lines, particularly since the `\textnote{}` macro uses the line number). And it makes sure that the notes section is set with a flush bottom line, rather than with the ragged bottom line used for the verse sections. Also, it sets a label for sending the page number of the textual notes to the table of contents.

First, a few commands for use by all of the endnotes sections. `\setendnotessectiontitledefaults` sets the title of the endnotes section at the top of the first page of that species of note, and takes six arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title of the endnote section, (2) commands to be issued before setting the title (minimally, a penalty, such as `\poemtitlepenalty`), (3) the font size in which the title is to be set in the text (such as `\poemtitlefont` or `\large`), (4) any indentation of the title (`\relax` to put the title where `\poemtitle` puts it, or `\titleindent` to put it where `\sequencesectiontitle` puts it), (5) commands to be issued after the title is set (such as `\afterpoemtitleskip`) and (6) the label to be used for this section, to be used to set the page number in the table of contents.

`\setendnotessectiontitle` is a simpler version of `\setendnotessectiontitledefaults` with all the defaults filled in, leaving only two arguments, the title of the section, and the label for use by the table of contents.

`\contentsendnotesdefaults` sets the defaults for the table of contents entries for endnotes sections. It takes four arguments which are, in order, (1) the title of the endnote section, (2) the indentation of the title in the table of contents (such as `\contentsindentone`), (3), the font size in which the title should be set (such as `\contentspoemtitlefont`) and (4) the amount overrun lines in the table of contents should be indented (such as `\contentsindenttwoamount`).

`\contentsendnotesindent` sets the default indent for table of contents entries for endnotes sections, and `\contentsendnotesfont` sets the default font for the.

`\contentsendnotestitle` is a simpler command for sending information about endnote sections to the table of contents, taking only two arguments, the title and the label used for page reference purposes.

```

766 % Generic command for titles of endnote sections
767 \newcommand{\setendnotessectiontitledefaults}[6]{%
768 #2%
769 #3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
770 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1\end{center}}\else #4 #1\fi}%
771 \end{titleentryenvironment}%

```

```

772 #5%
773 \label{#6}
774 }
775 % Simpler version with only two parameters, the title and the label
776 % for page references
777 \newcommand{\setendnotessectiontitle}[2]{
778 \setendnotessectiontitledefaults{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty\backmattersink\begin{center}}{\backmatte
779 {\relax}{\end{center}}\lefthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink}{#2}}
780 % Generic command for sending info about endnotes sections to table
781 % of contents
782 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesdefaults}[4]{\ifpoemcontentson
783 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\begin\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
784 \literalcontents{#2{#3#1}}}%
785 \ifputpagenumberincontents
786 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentsleaders}%
787 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\pageref
788 \string{#4\string}}}%
789 \else
790 \literalcontents{\relax}%
791 \fi
792 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\end\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
793 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par}%
794 \fi
795 }
796 % default styles for contents entries for endnotes sections
797 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesindent}{\contentsindentone}
798 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesfont}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
799 % simpler command to set up contents entry with only two parameters,
800 % the title and the label for page references
801 \newcommand{\contentsendnotestitle}[2]{%
802 \contentsendnotesdefaults{#1}{\contentsendnotesindent}{\contentsendnotesfont}{#2}}%
803 }
804 % command for paragraph breaks within notes
805 \newlength{\noteindentation}
806 \setlength{\noteindentation}{1em}
807 \newcommand{\noteparbreak}{\\
808 \hspace*{\noteindentation}}
809 % tokens to use to change the names of the sections
810 \newtoks{\pmclnotesname}
811 \pmclnotesname={TEXTUAL NOTES}
812 \newcommand{\changenotesname}[1]{\pmclnotesname={#1}}
813 \newtoks{\notesheadername}
814 \notesheadername={Textual Notes to}
815 \newcommand{\changenotesheader}[1]{\notesheadername={#1}}
816 \newtoks{\textnotescontentsname}
817 \textnotescontentsname={Textual Notes}
818 \newcommand{\changetextnotescontentsname}[1]{\textnotescontentsname={#1}}
819 % A boolean to change to two column notes.
820 \newif\iftextnotestwocol
821 \textnotestwocolfalse

```



```

822 % Setup for textual notes
823 \newcommand{\maketextnotes}{\global\textnotesontrue
824   \global\verselinenumberstrue
825   \newwrite\textnotes
826   \immediate\openout\textnotes=\jobname.ent
827   \literaltextnote{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
828     {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
829 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
830 \fancyhead{}
831 \fancyfoot{}
832 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
833 \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\notesheadname~\mymarks}}
834 \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\notesheadname~\mymarks}}
835 \fancyfoot[C]{\small\em \the\notesheadname~\mymarks}}
836 \mark{3}
837 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\pmclnotesname}{textualnotes}
838 \tolerance=500\language=0
839 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
840 \iftextnotestwocol
841 \begin{multicols}{2}
842 \fi
843 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
844 }
845 }
846

```

\makeemendations Next, the emendations section:

```

847 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
848 \newtoks\emendationsname
849 \emendationsname={EMENDATIONS}
850 \newcommand{\changeemendationsname}[1]{\emendationsname={#1}}
851 \newtoks\emendationsheadname
852 \emendationsheadname={Emendations to}
853 \newcommand{\changeemendationsheader}[1]{\emendationsheadname={#1}}
854 \newtoks\emendationscontentsname
855 \emendationscontentsname={Emendations}
856 \newcommand{\changeemendationscontentsname}[1]{\emendationscontentsname={#1}}
857 \emendationscontentsname={#1}}
858 % two column notes
859 \newif\ifemendationstwocol
860 \emendationstwocolfalse
861 % Emendations section setup
862 \newcommand{\makeemendations}{\global\emendationsontrue
863   \newwrite\emendations
864   \global\verselinenumberstrue
865   \immediate\openout\emendations=\jobname.emd
866   \literatemend{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
867     {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
868 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
869 \fancyhead{}

```

```

870 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
871 \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\emendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
872 \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\emendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
873 \fancyfoot{}
874 \mark{3}
875 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\emendationsname}{emendationnotes}
876 \tolerance=500\language=0
877 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
878 \ifemendationstwocol
879 \begin{multicols}{2}
880 \fi
881 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
882 }
883 }

```

\makeexplanatorynotes And the explanatory notes:

```

884 % Tokens to change names of these notes
885 \newtoks{\explanationsname}
886 \explanationsname={EXPLANATORY NOTES}
887 \newcommand{\changeexplanationsname}[1]{\explanationsname={#1}}
888 \newtoks{\explanationsheadername}
889 \explanationsheadername={Explanatory Notes to}
890 \newcommand{\changeexplanationsheader}[1]{\explanationsheadername={#1}}
891 \newtoks{\explanationscontentsname}
892 \explanationscontentsname={Explanatory Notes}
893 \newcommand{\changeexplanationscontentsname}[1]{%
894 \explanationscontentsname={#1}}
895 % Two column notes
896 \newif\ifexplanationstwocol
897 \explanationstwocolfalse
898 % Explanatory notes setup
899 \newcommand{\makeexplanatorynotes}{\global\explanontrue
900 \global\verselinenumberstrue
901 \newwrite\explanations
902 \immediate\openout\explanations=\jobname.enx
903 \literate\explain{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
904 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
905 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}}
906 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
907 \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\explanationsheadername~\mymarks}}
908 \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\explanationsheadername~\mymarks}}
909 \fancyfoot{}
910 \mark{3}
911 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\explanationsname}{explanatorynotes}
912 \tolerance=500\language=0
913 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
914 \ifexplanationstwocol
915 \begin{multicols}{2}
916 \fi
917 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}

```

```

918 }
919 }
920

```

Auxiliary commands for note and title sections

```

921 %
922 \newcommand{\@pagemarktotextnotes}[1]{%
923 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle}\string}%
924 \string{#1}\string}\string\unskip}%
925 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\mark%
926 \string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle}\string}}%
927 }
928 \newcommand{\@poempagetotextnotes}[1]{%
929 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par\string\argpageref\string{#1}\string}\string\unskip}%
930 \@pagemarktotextnotes{#1}}
931 \newcommand{\@poemtitletotextnotes}[1]{\literaltextnote{\textbf{#1}}}

```

## 21.12 Book, volume, and volume section titles

\wholebooktitle

```

\booksection 932 \newcommand{\wholebooktitle}[1]{\Huge\begin{center}
933 \hbox{#1}\end{center}}
934 }
935 \newcommand{\booksection}[1]{\volumesection{#1}}

```

\volumetitle

```

936 \newcommand{\volumetitle}[1]{%
937 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\volumetitlesink\par}{\volumetitlefont}
938 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
939 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
940 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
941 \literalcontents{\goodbreak}
942 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\relax}{\contentsvolumefont}
943 {\contentsindentoneamount}
944 \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
945 \literaltextnote{\notesvolumetitlepenalty\bigskip\goodbreak\par}
946 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
947 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
948 \putpagenumberinnotestrue}

```

\volumetitlefirstline

```

\volumetitlelastline 949 \newcommand{\volumetitlefirstline}[1]{\firstlinesettings%
\volumesubtitle 950 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\volumetitlesink\par}
\volumesectiontitle 951 {\volumetitlefont}
952 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
953 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
954 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
955 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\relax}{\contentsvolumefont}
956 {\contentsindentoneamount}

```

```

957 % \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
958 % \literaltextnote{\notesvolumetitlepenalty\bigskip\par}
959 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
960 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
961 \putpagenumberinnotesttrue}
962 \newcommand{\volumetitlemiddleline}[1]{\middlelinesettings%
963 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}
964 {\volumetitlefont}
965 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
966 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
967 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
968 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentsvolumefont}
969 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
970 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
971 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
972 \putpagenumberinnotesttrue}
973 \newcommand{\volumetitlelastline}[1]{\lastlinesettings%
974 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}
975 {\volumetitlefont}
976 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
977 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
978 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
979 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentsvolumefont}
980 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
981 \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
982 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
983 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
984 \putpagenumberinnotesttrue}
985 \newcommand{\volumesubtitle}[1]{\volumesubtitlefont
986 \volumetitleshift #1 \par}
987 \ifpoemcontentson
988 \literalcontents{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont
989 #1\vspace{3pt}\par\nobreak}}
990 \fi
991 \iftextnoteson\iftextnotesatend
992 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\backmattervolumesubtitlefont\ #1}
993 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par \string\backmattertextfont}
994 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}
995 \fi\fi
996 }
997 \newcommand{\volumesectiontitle}[1]
998 {\clearpage\thispagestyle{volumefirststyle}
999 \begin{center} {\volumesubtitlefont\textbf{#1}}
1000 \end{center} \bigskip\bigskip
1001 \ifpoemcontentson
1002 \literalcontents{\goodbreak{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont #1\par\nobreak}}
1003 \fi
1004 \iftextnoteson\iftextnotesatend
1005 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\notesvolumetitlepenalty}
1006 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par \string\begin{bf}}

```

```

1007      \immediate\write\textnotes{#1 \string\end{bf}}
1008      \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par}
1009      \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}
1010    \fi\fi
1011  }

```

## 21.13 Commands for setting titles of poems and sequences

First, commands for sending labels to the table of contents and to the notes sections. Since these are internal commands, not intended to be issued in the body of the text, they might have been marked out with “at” signs to prevent accidental redefinition. But since they are repeatedly written out to the external files, it seemed more economical to run the risk of redefinition than to write out `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` with every note.

```

1012 \newcommand{\makepoemlabel}[1]{\label{#1}}
1013 \newcommand{\argpageref}[1]{\pageref{#1}}

```

### 21.13.1 Poem Titles

`\poemtitle` All of the other commands in this section are variations on this one, changing the penalties, the skips, the indentations, and the fonts. The command breaks into three sections. First, the title is set in the text. `\poemtitlepenalty` tests whether there is room for the title and the first couple of lines. `\poemtitlefont` globally sets the fonts for all poem titles. You can put the argument in an `\hbox{}` to make sure that the poem title is not broken across two lines, and the `\label` records the page for the contents and notes sections. `\afterpoemtitleskip` is the amount of white space after a poem title. `\fulltitleholder` and `\@compoundlabelscratch` record the title for concatenation later. All of these commands can manage titles with control sequences in them, such as for italics or international characters. In an earlier version there were special commands for such titles, using two arguments (one with the control sequence, one without it). Those commands are no longer necessary, but have been retained for backward compatibility with earlier versions.

Second, the poem is entered in the external file for the table of contents. `\contentsindentone` sets it in one level in the hierarchy of indentations, and `\contentspoemtitlefont` is the type size used for poems in the table of contents. The `\pageref{}` holds the page number of the poem.

Third, a new paragraph is opened in the textual notes for textual collations. `\@poempagetotextnotes{}` sends the page number to the textual notes. `\@poemtitletotextnotes{}` sends the title.

```

1014
1015
1016 \newcommand{\m@kep@emlabel}{\ifsinglelinetitle%
1017   \addtocounter{poemnumber}{1}%
1018   \makepoemlabel{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1019   \else\iftitlefirstline%
1020     \addtocounter{poemnumber}{1}%
1021     \makepoemlabel{poem\thepoemnumber}%

```

```

1022     \else \relax
1023 \fi
1024 \fi
1025 }
1026
1027 \newcommand{\m@ken@teholder}[1]{%
1028 \ifsingletitle
1029 \fulltitleholder={#1}%
1030 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1031 \else\iftitlefirstline
1032     \fulltitleholder={#1}%
1033     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1034 \else\iftitlemiddleline
1035     \titlesofar=\fulltitleholder
1036     \titleincrement={~#1}%
1037     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
1038     \fulltitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
1039     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1040 \else
1041     \titlesofar=\fulltitleholder
1042     \titleincrement={~#1}%
1043     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
1044     \fulltitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
1045     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1046 \fi
1047     \fi
1048 \fi
1049 }
1050 \newif\ifcentertitleson
1051 \newcommand{\centertitles}{\centertitlesontrue}
1052 \makeatletter
1053 \newcommand{\set@p@emtitle}[6]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
1054 {#2}%
1055 {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
1056 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1\end{center}\else #4 #1\fi}%
1057 \end{titleentryenvironment}}}%
1058 {#5}%
1059 \m@kep@emlabel
1060 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1061 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}
1062 %
1063 \newcommand{\setcontentsleaders}[1]{%
1064     \def\contentsleaders{#1\nobreak%
1065 }}
1066 \setcontentsleaders{~/~}
1067 \newcommand{\c@ntentsinfo}[4]{\ifpoemcontentson
1068 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\setlength\string\contentsentryoverrun\string{#4\string}}}%
1069 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\begin\string\contentsentryenvironment\string}}}%
1070 \literalcontents{#2{#3#1}}}%
1071 \ifputpagenumberincontents

```

```

1072 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentsleaders}%
1073 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\pageref
1074 \string{poem\thepoemnumber\string}}%
1075 \else
1076 \literalcontents{\relax}%
1077 \fi
1078 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\end\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
1079 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par}%
1080 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\setlength\string\contentsentryoverrun
1081 \string{\string\contentsindentoneamount\string}}%
1082 \fi
1083 }
1084 \newif\ifputtitleinnotes
1085 \puttitleinnotestru
1086 \newcommand{\t@xtnotesinfo}[1]{\iftextnoteson
1087 \iftextnotesatend
1088 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\notespoemclubpenalty}%
1089 \ifputpagenumberinnotes
1090 \@poempagetotextnotes{poem\thepoemnumber}%
1091 \fi
1092 \ifputtitleinnotes
1093 \@poemtitletotextnotes{#1}%
1094 \fi
1095 % \else
1096 % \relax
1097 \fi\fi
1098 }
1099 \newcommand{\poemtitle}[1]{%
1100 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1101 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1102 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1103 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1104 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1105 }
1106 \newcommand{\poemtitlenocontents}[1]{%
1107 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1108 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1109 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1110 }
1111 \newcommand{\poemtitlebaretitle}[1]{%
1112 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1113 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1114 }
1115 \newcommand{\poemtitleonlycontents}[1]{%
1116 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1117 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1118 }
1119 \newcommand{\poemtitleonlynotes}[1]{%
1120 \m@kep@emlabel
1121 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%

```

```

1122 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1123 }
1124 \newcommand{\poemtitlenonotes}[1]{%
1125 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1126 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1127 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1128 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1129 }

```

`\poemtitleitalic` Poems with italic titles or other formatting (such as `\hour{}`) take two arguments. The second argument is discarded. This command is to maintain backward compatibility with earlier versions.

```

1130 \newcommand{\poemtitleitalic}[2]{%
1131 \poemtitle{#1}}

```

For poem subtitles, see the entry on `\sequencesections subtitle{}`.

`\poemtitlefirstline` Next, macros for setting multiline poem titles. Notice the special larger penalty  
`\poemtitlemiddleline` for page breaks in the middle of multiple line title.

```

\poemtitlelastline 1132 \newcommand{\firstlinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
1133 \titlefirstlinetrue
1134 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
1135 \putpagenumberinnotestruetrue}
1136
1137 \newcommand{\middlelinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
1138 \titlemiddlelinetrue
1139 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
1140 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse}
1141
1142 \newcommand{\lastlinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
1143 \titlelastlinetrue
1144 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
1145 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse}
1146
1147 \newcommand{\restoresinglelinesettings}{\putpagenumberinnotestruetrue
1148 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
1149 \titlefirstlinefalse
1150 \titlemiddlelinefalse
1151 \titlelastlinefalse
1152 \singlelinetitletrue}
1153
1154
1155 \newcommand{\poemtitlefirstline}[1]{
1156 \firstlinesettings
1157 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1158 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}%
1159 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1160 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1161 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%

```



```
1162 \restoresinglelinesettings
1163 }
```

Notice the use of token registers and `\edef` here to concatenate the first and second lines.

```
1164 \newcommand{\poemtitlemiddleline}[1]{%
1165 \middlelinesettings
1166 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}%
1167 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}%
1168 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1169 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1170 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1171 \restoresinglelinesettings
1172 }
1173 \newcommand{\poemtitlelastline}[1]{%
1174 \lastlinesettings
1175 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}%
1176 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1177 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1178 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1179 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1180 \restoresinglelinesettings
1181 }
```

Titles for sections of poems, and multi-line titles of sections of poems

```
\poemsectiontitle
\poemsectiontitlefirstline 1182 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitle}[1]{%
\poemsectiontitlemiddleline 1183 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
\poemsectiontitlelastline 1184 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1185 {\titleindentamount}%
1186 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1187 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1188 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1189 }
1190 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{%
1191 \firstlinesettings
1192 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1193 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}%
1194 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1195 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1196 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1197 \restoresinglelinesettings
1198 }
1199 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{%
1200 \middlelinesettings
1201 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1202 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}%
1203 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1204 {\contentsindentfouramount}%

```

```

1205 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1206 \restoresinglelinesettings
1207 }
1208 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlelastline}[1]{%
1209 \lastlinesettings
1210 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1211 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1212 {\titleindentamount}%
1213 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1214 {\contentsindentfouramount}%
1215 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1216 \restoresinglelinesettings
1217 }

```

\poemsectiontitlenocontents

```

\poemsectionbaretitle 1218 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{%
\poemsubsectiontitle 1219 \sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents{#1}}%
\poemtitlenotitle 1220 \newcommand{\poemfirstsectiontitle}[1]{%
\poemtitlenotitleitalic 1221 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1222 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1223 {\titleindentamount}%
1224 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1225 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1226 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1227 }
1228 \newcommand{\poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{%
1229 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1230 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1231 {\titleindentamount}}
1232 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{%
1233 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1234 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1235 {\titleindentamount}%
1236 }
1237 \newcommand{\poemsubsectiontitle}[1]{%
1238 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1239 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1240 {\titleindenttwoamount}%
1241 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1242 {\contentsindentfouramount}%
1243 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1244 }
1245 \newcommand{\poemtitlenotitle}[1]{%
1246 \m@kep@emlabel
1247 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1248 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1249 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1250 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1251 }
1252 \newcommand{\poemtitlenotitleitalic}[2]{%

```

1253 \poemtitlenotitle{1}}

### 21.13.2 Poetic Sequences: Setting the Main Title

\sequencetitle Variants here for multiple line titles and titles with font commands. Also some all-purpose kludges to work around other problems.

```
1254 \newcommand{\sequencetitle}[1]{
1255 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
1256 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1257 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
1258 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1259 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
1260 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
1261 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1262 }
```

\sequencetitlefirstline To set the title of a poetic sequence if it requires several lines to do so.

```
\sequencetitlemiddleline 1263 \newcommand{\sequencetitlefirstline}[1]{
\sequencetitlelastline 1264 \firstlinesettings
1265 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinesequencesepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
1266 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
1267 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1268 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
1269 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1270 \restoresinglelinesettings
1271 }
1272 \newcommand{\sequencetitlemiddleline}[1]{
1273 \middlelinesettings
1274 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1275 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
1276 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1277 {\contentsindentthreeamount}
1278 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1279 \restoresinglelinesettings
1280 }
1281 \newcommand{\sequencetitlelastline}[1]{
1282 \lastlinesettings
1283 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1284 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1285 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1286 {\contentsindentthreeamount}
1287 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1288 \restoresinglelinesettings
1289 }
```

### 21.13.3 Sections of poetic sequences

\sequencesectiontitle First, the easy case: a simple section of a poetic sequence.

```
1290 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitle}[1]{
```

```

1291 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1292 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1293 {\titleindentamount}
1294 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1295 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1296 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1297 }

```

`\sequencefirstsectiontitle` The first poem in a sequence is a special case.

```

1298 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitle}[1]{
1299 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1300 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1301 {\titleindentamount}
1302 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1303 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1304 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1305 }

```

`\sequencesectiontitlenonotes` If you don't have any notes on a sequence section, it seems a shame to open an entry in the textual notes for that section:

```

1306 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlenonotes}[1]{
1307 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1308 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1309 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1310 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1311 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1312 }
1313 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlenonotes}[1]{
1314 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1315 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1316 {\titleindentamount}
1317 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1318 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1319 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1320 }

```

For multiple line titles of sequence sections

```

1321 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1322 \firstlinesettings
1323 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1324 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1325 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1326 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1327 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1328 \restoresinglelinesettings
1329 }
1330 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1331 \middlelinesettings
1332 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}

```

```

1333 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1334 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1335 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1336 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1337 \restoresinglelinesettings
1338 }
1339 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1340 \lastlinesettings
1341 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}
1342 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1343 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1344 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1345 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1346 \restoresinglelinesettings
1347 }

```

The following macros are to kludge around situations where the section title is just a number. This macro has two arguments. Originally, the first was the title of the section. The second is the title of the sequence as a whole. I've retained the second argument for backward compatibility with earlier versions, but you can set it to anything, since it's discarded now.

```

1348 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents}[2]{
1349 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1350 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1351 {\titleindentamount}
1352 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1353 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1354 }
1355 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlenocontents}[2]{
1356 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1357 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1358 {\titleindentamount}
1359 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1360 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1361 }

```

If the first section of a sequence is a multiple line title, the following macros can handle the special problems that situation poses.

```

1362 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1363 \firstlinesettings
1364 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1365 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1366 {\titleindentamount}
1367 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1368 {\contentsindentthreeamount}
1369 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1370 \restoresinglelinesettings
1371 }
1372 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1373 \sequencesectiontitlemiddleline{#1}}

```

```

1374
1375 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline}[1]
1376 {\sequencesectiontitlelastline{#1}}
1377
1378 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes}[1]{
1379 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1380 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1381 {\titleindentamount}
1382 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1383 {\contentsindentthreeamount}
1384 %\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1385 }

```

`\sequencesectionsubsubtitle`

```

\poemsubsubtitle 1386 % \newcommand{\sequencesectionsubsubtitle}[1]{\subsectionfont \hbox{\titleindent #1}}
1387 % \nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak
1388 % }
1389 \newcommand{\sequencesectionsubsubtitle}[1]{\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}
1390 {\subsectionfont}{\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\titleind
1391 }
1392 \newcommand{\poemsubsubtitle}[1]{\sequencesectionsubsubtitle{#1}
1393 }

```

Another (former) kludge for special situations:

```

1394 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitleitalicnonotes}[2]
1395 {\sequencesectiontitlenonotes{#1}
1396 }

```

Italic titles used to require two arguments. These commands are retained only for backward compatibility.

`\sequencesectiontitleitalic`

```

1397 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitleitalic}[2]{
1398 \sequencesectiontitle{#1}}
1399 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlefirstlineitalic}[2]
1400 {\sequencesectiontitlefirstline{#1}}
1401 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{
1402 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1403 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1404 }

```

#### 21.13.4 Subsections of sequences

`\sequencesubsectiontitle` Continuing several levels down: macros for setting subsections and subsubsections of sequences.

```

1405 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitle}[1]{
1406 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectionfont}
1407 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1408 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1409 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}

```

```

1410 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1411 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1412 }
1413 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1414 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1415 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1416 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1417 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\contentsindentfouramount}
1418 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1419 }
1420 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitle}[1]
1421 {\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1422 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1423 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1424 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1425 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1426 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1427 }
1428 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]
1429 {\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1430 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1431 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1432 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1433 \%{\contentsindentfouramount}
1434 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1435 }
1436 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1437 \firstlinesettings
1438 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1439 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1440 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1441 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1442 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1443 \restoresinglelinesettings
1444 }
1445 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1446 \middlelinesettings
1447 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1448 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1449 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1450 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1451 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1452 \restoresinglelinesettings
1453 }
1454 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1455 \lastlinesettings
1456 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1457 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1458 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1459 \%c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}

```

```

1460 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1461 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1462 \restoresinglelinesettings
1463 }
1464 \newcommand{\sequencesubsubsectiontitle}[1]{
1465 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1466 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}
1467 {\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1468 {\titleindentthreamount}
1469 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1470 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1471 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1472 }
1473 \newcommand{\sequencesubsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1474 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1475 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1476 {\titleindentthreamount}
1477 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1478 %{\contentsindentfiveamount}
1479 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1480 }
1481 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1482 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1483 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1484 {\titleindentthreamount}
1485 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\contentsindentfiveamount}
1486 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1487 }
1488
1489
1490 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1491 \firstlinesettings
1492 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1493 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1494 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1495 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1496 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1497 \restoresinglelinesettings
1498 }
1499 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1500 \sequencesubsubsectiontitlemiddleline{#1}}
1501 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1502 \sequencesubsubsectiontitlelastline{#1}}

```

Interjections in sequences, as in Robert Penn Warren's *Or Else*.

```

1503 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1504 \sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline{#1}}
1505 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1506 \sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline{#1}
1507 }

```



```

1508 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1509 \sequencefirstsubsectionmiddleline{#1}
1510 }

```

`\setmargpoemtitle` Titles with a marginal reference to the notes giving the page in the notes where a comment on the poem appears, as in Altenberg's Heredia edition. `\setmargpoemtitle` takes as its second argument anything you want to add to the line while the title is being processed. `\JHpoemtitle` is just `\setmargpoemtitle` with the second argument passed to `\JHlabel`, which actually makes the marginal mark.

```

1511 \newcommand{\set@margp@emtitle}[7]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
1512 {#2}%
1513 {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}}%
1514 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1 #7\end{center}\else #4 #1
1515 #7\fi}\end{titleentryenvironment}}%
1516 {#5}%
1517 \m@kep@emlabel%
1518 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1519 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}
1520
1521 \newcommand{\setmargpoemtitle}[2]{%
1522 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1523 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}{#2}%
1524 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1525 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1526 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1527 \sources{\label{#2}}}%
1528 }
1529 %\newcommand{\set@margp@emtitle}[7]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
1530 %{#2}%
1531 %{#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}}%
1532 %{#4 #1 #7}\end{titleentryenvironment}}%
1533 %{#5}%
1534 %\m@kep@emlabel%
1535 %\m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1536 %\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}

```

`\JHpoemtitle` Macros to set marginal line references.

```

1537 % \newcommand{\JHpoemtitle}[2]{%
1538 % \setmargpoemtitle{#1}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1539 % }
1540 \newcommand{\JHpoemtitle}[2]{%
1541 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1542 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1543 {\JHlabel{#2}}}%
1544 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1545 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1546 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1547 \sources{\label{#2}}}%

```

```

1548 }
1549 \newcommand{\JHprosesectiontitle}[2]{%
1550 \set@marginp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1551 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1552 {\JHlabel{#2}}%
1553 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1554 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1555 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1556 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1557 }
1558 \newcommand{\JHlabel}[1]{%
1559 \marginpar{{\scriptsize{\the\marginrefmarker~p.~\pageref{#1}}}}}

```

`\JHsequencetitle` Macros to set marginal page references for sequences, sequence sections, poem sections, poem subtitles, dedications, and epigraphs.

```

1560 \newcommand{\JHsequencetitle}[2]{%
1561 \set@marginp@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}%
1562 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1563 {\JHlabel{#2}}%
1564 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse%
1565 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}%
1566 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1567 \putpagenumberincontentstrue%
1568 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1569 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1570 }
1571 \newcommand{\JHsequencesectiontitle}[2]{%
1572 \set@marginp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1573 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1574 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1575 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1576 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1577 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1578 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1579 }
1580 \newcommand{\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle}[2]{%
1581 \set@marginp@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}%
1582 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1583 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1584 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1585 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1586 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1587 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1588 }
1589 \newcommand{\JHpoemsectiontitle}[2]{%
1590 \set@marginp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1591 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1592 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1593 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1594 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%

```

```

1595 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1596 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1597 }
1598 \newcommand{\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle}[2]{%
1599 \set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1600 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1601 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1602 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1603 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1604 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1605 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1606 }
1607 \newcommand{\JHsequencesectionssubtitle}[2]{%
1608 \set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1609 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1610 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1611 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1612 }
1613 \newcommand{\JHpoemsubtitle}[2]{\JHsequencesectionssubtitle{#1}{#2}}
1614 }
1615 \newcommand{\JHdedication}[2]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}%
1616 \emph{#1}\JHlabel{#2}\end{epigraphquote}%
1617 \sources{\label{#2}}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
1618 \newcommand{\JHepigraph}[2]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}%
1619 \emph{#1}\JHlabel{#2}\end{epigraphquote}%
1620 \sources{\label{#2}}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}

```

`\backmattersectiontitle` Macros to set the titles of back matter sections such as textual notes.

```

1621 \newcommand{\backmattersectiontitle}[1]{%
1622 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\volumetitlefont}%
1623 {\relax}{\backmattersink}{\z@}%
1624 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1625 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1626 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1627 }

```

`\margreftextnote` Macros to set marginal page references showing where in the apparatus a comment upon the marked line is to be found. `\margrefspecial{}` is for occasions when you might need to set the label by hand. For instance, suppose you have several textnotes on a line, and the note you wish to draw attention to is on a different page from the other notes. `\margreftextnote` under those circumstances will point only to the first note. Use `\margrefspecial` to point to the other note, giving `\margrefspecial` a unique argument, and opening that note with a command using the same argument.

```

1628 \newcounter{margrefnumber}
1629 \setcounter{margrefnumber}{1}
1630 \newtoks{\margrefmarker}
1631 \margrefmarker={\dag}
1632 \newcommand{\setmargrefmarker}[1]{\margrefmarker={#1}}

```

```

1633 \newcommand{\makemargreflabel}{\string\label\string{margref\themargrefnumber\string}}
1634 \newif{\ifmargrefstomargin}
1635 \margrefstomarginfalse
1636 \newcommand{\setmargref}
1637 {\marginpar{\ifmargrefstomargin\hspace*{.5\leftmargin}\fi\scriptsize {\the\margrefmarker~p.~\pageref{margref\themargrefnumber}}}}
1638 }
1639 % \newcommand{\setmargref}
1640 % {\marginpar{\scriptsize {\the\margrefmarker~p.~\pageref{margref\themargrefnumber}}}}
1641 % }
1642 \newcommand{\margreftextnote}{%
1643 \iftextnoteson\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1644 \immediate\write\textnotes{\makemargreflabel}%
1645 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1646 }
1647 \newcommand{\margrefexplanatory}{%
1648 \ifexplanon\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1649 \immediate\write\explanations{\makemargreflabel}%
1650 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1651 }
1652 \newcommand{\margrefemendation}{%
1653 \ifemendationson\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1654 \immediate\write\emendations{\makemargreflabel}%
1655 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1656 }
1657 \newcommand{\margrefspecial}[1]{%
1658 \marginpar{\scriptsize {\the\margrefmarker~p.~\pageref{#1}}}}
1659 }

```

To change other title making commands to produce titles which add something while processing the title, you should: 1. add one to the number of arguments it uses 2. replace the use of `\set@p@emtitle` with `\set@margp@emtitle` 3. add `{#2}` or `\JHlabel{#2}` or whatever as the last (seventh) argument to `\set@margp@emtitle`. So, to change `\sequencetitle{}` to `\JHsequencetitle{}` start with:

```

\newcommand{\sequencetitle}[1]{
\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
\putpagenumberincontentsfalse
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
{\contentsindenttwoamount}
\putpagenumberincontentstrue
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
}

```

and change it to

```

\catcode'\@=11
\newcommand{\JHsequencetitle}[2]{

```

```

\set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
{\JHlabel{#2}}\putpagenumberincontentsfalse
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
{\contentsindenttwoamount}
\putpagenumberincontentstrue
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
}
\catcode'\@=12

```

## 21.14 Epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, dedications

Notice that epigraphs to volumes are handled differently from epigraphs to poems.

```

\epigraph
\headnote 1660 \newcommand{\epigraph}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
\attribution 1661 \emph{#1}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
\poemdedication 1662 \newcommand{\headnote}[1]{\epigraph{#1}}
\volume dedication 1663 \newcommand{\attribution}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
\volumeepigraph 1664 {\small\emph{#1}}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
\volumeattribution 1665 \newcommand{\poemdedication}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
1666 \emph{#1}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
1667 \providecommand{\dedication}[1]{\poemdedication{#1}}
1668 \newcommand{\volume dedication}[1]{\par\bigskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1669 \emph{#1}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
1670 \newcommand{\volumeepigraph}[1]{\par\bigskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1671 \emph{#1}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
1672 \newcommand{\volumeattribution}[1]{\par\smallskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1673 {\small \emph{#1}}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
1674 %\newcommand{\poemdate}[1]{\begin{prosesection}\bigskip\raggedright[#1]\bigskip\end{prosesection}}
1675 \newlength{\dateindent}%
1676 \setlength{\dateindent}{\leftmargin}%
1677 \newcommand{\variabledateindent}{%
1678 \setlength{\dateindent}{\linewidth}%
1679 \addtolength{\dateindent}{-\versewidth}%
1680 \addtolength{\dateindent}{-.5\dateindent}}
1681 %\newcommand{\poemdate}[1]{\bigskip\begin{raggedleft}\hspace{\dateindent}#1\end{raggedleft}\bigskip}
1682 \newcommand{\poemdate}[1]{\iflastpoemcentered\variabledateindent%
1683 \else\setlength{\dateindent}{\leftmargin}%
1684 \fi%
1685 \bigskip\begin{raggedleft}\hspace{\dateindent}#1\end{raggedleft}\bigskip}%

```

## 21.15 Tools used for making note sections

The main tool is a dirty trick borrowed from John Lavagnino's package for endnotes, `endnotes`, which allows for writing out literal characters to an external file. The trick involves redefining the space character as the newline character and treating the text of the note as the body of a macro that `\meaning` specifies. The

result is that the text is written to the external file in a long ribbon one word wide.

```

1686 \def\strip#1>{}
1687 \newcommand{\literaltextnote}[1]{\iftextnotesatend
1688     \begingroup
1689         \def\next{#1}%
1690         \newlinechar='40
1691         \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1692     \endgroup\fi
1693 }
1694 \newcommand{\literationemend}[1]{\ifemendationsatend
1695     \begingroup
1696         \def\next{#1}%
1697         \newlinechar='40
1698         \immediate\write\emendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1699     \endgroup\fi
1700 }
1701 \newcommand{\literalexplain}[1]{\ifexplanatend
1702     \begingroup
1703         \def\next{#1}%
1704         \newlinechar='40
1705         \immediate\write\explanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1706     \endgroup\fi
1707 }
1708 \newcommand{\literalcontents}[1]{\ifpoemcontentson
1709     \begingroup
1710         \def\next{#1}%
1711         \newlinechar='40
1712         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1713     \endgroup\fi
1714 }
1715 \newcommand{\literaltextnoteshort}[1]{
1716 \iftextnotesatend
1717     \begingroup
1718         \def\next{#1}%
1719         \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1720     \endgroup\fi}
1721 \newcommand{\literationemendshort}[1]{\ifemendationsatend
1722     \begingroup
1723         \def\next{#1}%
1724         \immediate\write\emendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1725     \endgroup\fi}
1726 \newcommand{\literalexplainshort}[1]{\ifexplanatend
1727     \begingroup
1728         \def\next{#1}%
1729         \immediate\write\explanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1730     \endgroup\fi}
1731 \newcommand{\literalcontentsshort}[1]{\ifpoemcontentson
1732     \begingroup

```

```

1733         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1734     \endgroup\fi}
1735 \newcommand{\sameword}{\sim$}
1736 \newcommand{\missingpunct}{\$_{\wedge}$}

\pmccheckifinteger \pmccheckifinteger{<num>} checks if <num> is an integer. If it is, then
\ifinteger is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE. (Code taken from memoir
class, and based on Donald Arseneau's \Lpack{cite} package).

1737 \newcommand{\pmccheckifinteger}[1]{%
1738     \protected@edef\@vsa{#1}%
1739     \ifcat _\ifnum9<1\pmcgobm{#1} _\else A\fi
1740     \integertrue%
1741     \else
1742     \integerfalse%
1743     \fi%
1744 }
1745 \newif\ifinteger
1746 % \begin{macro}{\pmcgobm}
1747 % |\pmcgobm{|\meta{num}|}| is defined as \meta{num}. It could be defined as: \
1748 % |\newcommand{\pmcgobm}[1]{\ifx-#1\expandafter\gobm\else#1\fi}| \
1749 % which would remove a leading minus sign (hyphen) from its argument
1750 % (|gobm| = gobble minus sign).
1751 % (Code from memoir class and a posting to comp.text.tex by Donald Arseneau on 1997/07/21).
1752 % \begin{macrocode}
1753 \newcommand{\pmcgobm}[1]{#1}

```

## 21.16 Commands to make notes and send info to contents

```

\setlemmarange \setlemmarange calculates the range of line numbers for multi-line lemmas.

1754 % \newcommand{\setlemmarange}[1]{
1755 % \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}
1756 % \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}
1757 % \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theverselinenumber}
1758 % \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}
1759 % }
1760 \newcommand{\setlemmarange}[1]{%
1761 \pmccheckifinteger{#1}%
1762 \ifinteger
1763 \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}%
1764 \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
1765 \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theverselinenumber}%
1766 \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}%
1767 \else
1768 \setcounterfromref{lemmaend}{#1}\rangelemmatrue
1769 \fi
1770 \makeatother}

\citerange \citerange sets the range of line numbers for multi-line lemmas

1771 \newcommand{\citerange}{%

```

```

1772 \ifrangelemma
1773 \theverselinenumber --\thelemmaend
1774 \else
1775 \theverselinenumber
1776 \fi}

\resetlemmacounters \resetlemmacounters resets the counts for multiline lemmas.
1777 \newcommand{\resetlemmacounters}{\rangelemmafalse
1778 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}%
1779 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}%
1780 }

\checknoteheaders \checknoteheaders Checks and corrects the values in the running headers of
notes sections. The running headers are of the form “Notes to pages xx–yy.”
Every title and every note checks whether the values in the running header should
be changed. This command essentially gives a list of strings to be written on the
external file for the note section. When these strings are read back in when the
file is set, they make a little program that recalculates the values in the headers
during the processing of every note. Also typesets the line number or line number
range in notes sections.
1781 \newcommand{\checknoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string{notepageholdernote\string}%
1782 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi%
1783 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string{notepageholdernote\string}>%
1784 \string\value\string{notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
1785 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
1786 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip
1787 \string\unskip\string\relax\ \citerange :\string~\string\nolinebreak}%
1788

\textnote The basic \textnote{} command, on which everything else is based, has several
parts. First, it writes out a little program on the external endnotes file which,
when it is read back in when the endnotes are typeset, sets a variable with the
value of the page of the line the note is commenting upon and checks to see
whether that value is equal to or greater than that of previous notes on that page
of notes. Depending upon the outcome of that test, it sets the value of \mark
with the correct numbers to print the proper running header of the form “Textual
Notes to pp.xx–yy.” Second, it sends the line number of the line it is a comment
upon and the text of the note to the notes section. The optional first argument
is the number of lines covered by a multiline lemma. If there is no optional first
argument specified, the default is 0. The second argument is the text of the note,
which includes the rest of the lemma, other than the line number. It is up to you
to suitably abbreviate long lemmas.
1789 \newif\iftextnotessinglepar
1790 \newcommand{\textnote}[2][0]{%
1791 \iftextnoteson
1792 \setlemmarange{#1}%
1793 \immediate\write\textnotes{\checknoteheaders}%
1794 \literaltextnote{#2}%

```



```

1795     \iftextnotessinglepar%
1796     \literaltextnote{\par}%
1797     \fi%
1798     \fi
1799 \resetlemmacounters
1800 }

\accidental Accidentals: As it is, the command just tests to see whether accidentals are being
            included or not, and sets the accidental as a textnote if accidentals are being
            included. It would not be hard to divert accidentals to another external file in
            order to compile a separate list of accidentals. Accidentals, by their nature, cannot
            have multiline lemmas.
1801 \newcommand{\accidental}[1]{%
1802 \iftextnoteson%
1803 \ifincludeaccidentals%
1804     \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1805 \textnote{#1}%
1806 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1807     \iftextnotessinglepar%
1808     \literaltextnote{\par}%
1809     \fi%
1810 \fi\fi
1811 }

\tsvariant Typescript variants. Treated like accidentals. If they are being collected, they are
\tsaccidental sent to the textual notes. Again, it would not be hard to collect them separately.
            Typescript variants can have multiline lemmas.
1812 \newcommand{\tsvariant}[2][0]{%
1813 \iftextnoteson
1814 \ifincludetypescripts%
1815 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1816 \textnote{#1}{#2}%
1817 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1818 \fi\fi
1819 }
1820 \newcommand{\tsaccidental}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts\accidental{#1}\fi\fi}

\tsentry Typescript entries. Allows one to to selectively include or exclude typescript
          entries from lists of variants. If an entry begins with a comma (as it commonly
          will, since it will typically be a member of a list of entries, you need not put
          \unskip before the comma, since poemscol will do it for you. Thanks to Donald
          Arseneau for suggesting how to do this.
1821 \newcommand{\tsentry}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts{\ifnextchar,{\unskip}{%
1822 \ifnextchar,{\unskip}{}%
1823 }#1}\fi\fi\unskip}

\sources \sources{} is essentially a \textnote{} with no line number and no page check-
          ing. Useful for typesetting the sources of the text (hence the name) and for sending
          literal characters to the endnotes file for other purposes.

```

```

1824 \newcommand{\sources}[1]{%
1825 \iftextnoteson
1826   \begingroup
1827     \newlinechar='40
1828     \def\next{#1}%
1829     \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1830   \endgroup
1831   \iftextnotessinglepar%
1832   \literaltextnote{\par}%
1833   \fi%
1834 \fi
1835 }

```

## 21.17 Emendations and explanatory notes

The difference between these kinds of notes and ordinary `\textnotes{}` is that they must first test to see whether there have been any emendations or explanatory notes for the poem in question. If there have not been prior notes, then a new paragraph must be opened and the page number and title of the poem set in the note section.

`\titletoothernotes` `\titletoothernotes` sends the page and title information to the Emendations or Explanatory Notes sections. It is called only for the first emendation or explanatory note for a poem. It is designed so that if the user wishes to define another category of notes in which might not apply to all of the poems to be set — not all poems, for instance, have emendations — this command can be used for those notes as well.

```

1836 \newcommand{\titletoothernotes}{\string\par
1837 \ifputpagenumberinnotes%
1838 \string\argpageref\string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
1839 \string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle\string}%
1840 \string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
1841 \fi%
1842 \string\textbf\string{\ the\fulltitleholder\string}}%

```

`\emendation`

```

1843 \newif\ifemendationssinglepar
1844 \newcommand{\emendation}[2][0]{
1845 \ifemendationson
1846   \setlemmarange{#1}%
1847   \ifredundantemendations
1848     \iftextnoteson
1849     \ifrangelemma
1850     \textnote{#1}{#2}%
1851   \else
1852     \textnote{#2}%
1853   \fi % ifrangelemma}
1854 \iftextnotessinglepar%
1855 \literaltextnote{\par}%

```

```

1856     \fi% iftextnotesinglepar
1857         \fi %iftextnoteson
1858     \fi % ifredundantemendations
1859     \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
1860         \firstemendation
1861         \fi %noemendyet
1862         \global\noemendyetfalse
1863 \immediate\write\emendations{\checknoteheaders}%
1864     \literatemend{#2}%
1865     \ifemendationssinglepar%
1866     \literatemend{\par}%
1867     \fi% ifemendationssinglepar
1868 \fi % ifemendationson
1869 \resetlemmacounters
1870 }

```

This next is an internal command, called by `\emendation`. There's no need to use it explicitly.

```

1871 \newcommand{\firstemendation}{\ifemendationsatend
1872 \immediate\write\emendations{\titletoothernotes}\fi
1873 }

```

`\explanatory` Again, `\firstexplanatory` is internal, called by `\explanatory`.

```

1874 \newif\ifexplanationssinglepar
1875 \newcommand{\explanatory}[2][0]{%
1876 \ifexplanon
1877     \setlemmarange{#1}%
1878     \ifnoexplainyet % first explanation
1879     \firstexplanatory
1880     \fi %noexplainyet
1881     \global\noexplainyetfalse
1882 \immediate\write\explanations{\checknoteheaders}%
1883     \literateexplain{#2}%
1884     \ifexplanationssinglepar%
1885     \literateexplain{\par}%
1886     \fi%
1887     \fi % ifexplanon
1888 \resetlemmacounters
1889 }
1890
1891 \newcommand{\firstexplanatory}{\ifexplanatend
1892 \immediate\write\explanations{\titletoothernotes}\fi
1893 }
1894

```

## 21.18 Making new notes sections

`\definewnewnotetype` This monster macro has nine sections, and does all of the things required to set up a new end notes section. If you decide to mark a new kind of note in your text

with, say `\mynote`, but decide at the last moment against including those notes in your edition, simply don't issue `\putmynotes` at the point it might have appeared, and neither the notes section nor the contents entry for it will be included.

```

1895 \makeatletter
1896 \long\def\appendtomacro#1#2{%
1897 \begingroup
1898   \toks@{\expandafter{#1#2}}%
1899   \xdef#1{\the\toks@}%
1900 \endgroup}
1901 \makeatother
1902 \newcommand{\definewnotetype}[5]{%
1903 % 1. make an if for this kind of note and set it to true by default;
1904 % make an if for the first instance of the command per poem and set it
1905 % to false; make an if for setting the notes in single note
1906 % paragraphs and set it to false; make an if for setting
1907 % these notes in two column mode and set it to false
1908 %
1909 % Thanks to Igor Pechtchanski and Ulrich Schwarz.
1910 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1son\endcsname
1911 \global\csname #1sontrue\endcsname
1912 \expandafter\newif\csname ifno#1yet\endcsname
1913 \csname no#1yettrue\endcsname
1914 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname
1915 \csname #1ssingleparfalse\endcsname
1916 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1stwocol\endcsname
1917 \csname #1stwocolfalse\endcsname
1918 % 2. open a new output stream
1919 \expandafter\newwrite\csname #1s\endcsname
1920 % 3. open a file to associate with the stream
1921 \immediate\expandafter\openout\csname #1s\endcsname=\expandafter\jobname .#2
1922 % 4. set up a literalwrite command
1923 \expandafter\newcommand\csname literal#1\endcsname[1]{
1924 \begingroup
1925 \def\next{##1}%
1926 \newlinechar='40
1927 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1928 \endgroup}
1929 % 5. send heading information to output file
1930 % first, use literaltext to send commands without parameters
1931 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
1932 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
1933 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
1934 \fancyhead{}
1935 \fancyfoot{}
1936 \fancyhead[R0,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}
1937 % then immediate write to send the parameter for the marks in the
1938 % headers
1939 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fancyhead[C0]\string{\string{\string\small
1940 \string{\string\em\ #3\string~\string\mymarks\string}\string}\string}}

```

```

1941 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fancyhead[CE]\string{\string{\string\small
1942 \string{\string\em\ #3\string~\string\mymarks\string}\string}\string}}
1943 % then literal to finish the headers
1944 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\fancyfoot[C]{}}
1945 \mark{3}
1946 \backmattersink}
1947 % then immediate write to send the title of the section to print at
1948 % the top of the page
1949 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{
1950 \string\setendnotessectiontitle\string{#4\string}\string{#1notes\string}}
1951 % literal write to turn hyphenation on, set the font for the note
1952 % section, and turn on two column mode (if the boolean is set)
1953 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\lefthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink
1954 \tolerance=500\language=0
1955 \normalfont \backmattertextfont}
1956 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\if#1stwocol}
1957 \csname
1958 literal#1\endcsname{\begin{multicols}{2}\fi\setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}}%
1959 % \csname literal#1\endcsname{\setlength{\parindent}{2}}% problem here
1960 % 6. set up a command to write the page and title of the poem for the first
1961 % instance of this kind of note in a poem
1962 \expandafter\newcommand\csname first#1\endcsname{%
1963 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\titletoothernotes}%
1964 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\if#1ssinglepar}%
1965 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\par}%
1966 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fi}%
1967 }
1968 % 7. set up a command to write a note, complete with line numbers
1969 \expandafter\newcommand\csname #1\endcsname[2][0]{%
1970 \setlemmarange{##1}%
1971 \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
1972 \csname first#1\endcsname%
1973 \fi%
1974 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%
1975 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname
1976 #1s\endcsname{\string\nobreak\string\nobreak\checknoteheaders}%
1977 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##2}%
1978 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
1979 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
1980 \fi%
1981 \resetlemmacounters%
1982 }
1983 % prose version
1984 \expandafter\newcommand\csname prose#1\endcsname[3][0]{%
1985 \unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
1986 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
1987 \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
1988 \csname first#1\endcsname%
1989 \fi%
1990 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%

```

```

1991 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
1992 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##3}%
1993 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
1994 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
1995 \unskip%
1996 \fi%
1997 \resetlemmacounters\unskip%
1998 }
1999 % pm version
2000 \expandafter\newcommand\csname pm#1\endcsname[2][0]{%
2001     \setpmlenmarange{##1}%
2002     \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
2003     \csname first#1\endcsname%
2004     \fi%
2005 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%
2006 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2007 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\pmciterange}%
2008 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##2}%
2009 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
2010 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
2011 \fi%
2012 \pmresetlemmacounters\unskip%
2013 }
2014 % 8. modify the end of the poem environment to reset the first
2015 % command per poem boolean (so that the page and title will be set in
2016 % the notes section when the first note is called for a poem)
2017 % thanks to Heiko Oberdiek
2018 \makeatletter
2019 \appendtomacro{\endpoem}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
2020 \makeatother
2021 \makeatletter
2022 \appendtomacro{\endprosesection}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
2023 \makeatother
2024 \makeatletter
2025 \appendtomacro{\endpmsection}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
2026 \makeatother
2027
2028 % 9. command for closing the output file
2029 % command for reading in and printing the output file
2030 \expandafter\newcommand\csname put#1s\endcsname{
2031 \newpage\hyphenationforsmall
2032 \csname if#1stwocol\endcsname%
2033 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\end{multicols}}%
2034 \fi %\iftwocol
2035 \immediate\expandafter\closeout\csname #1s\endcsname
2036 \expandafter\input \jobname.#2
2037 \ifpoemcontentson
2038 \contentsendnotestitle{#5}{#1notes}
2039 \fi
2040 }

```

```

2041 % 10. command for making a marginal mark at a line, giving the page
2042 % number in the apparatus where a note is to be found
2043 \expandafter\newcommand\csname margref#1\endcsname{%
2044 \addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}
2045 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\makemargreflabel}%
2046 \setmargref
2047 }
2048 }

```

## 21.19 Prose sections

poemscot calls on lineno to do all the heavy lifting for making line numbers in prose sections and for making endnotes of various kinds for prose sections. First, set up a counter for the line number and for the modulo line number for prose sections, and set it to equal that used in verse sections. Then set the font for marginal line numbers to the size used in marginal line numbers in verse sections.

```

2049 \newcounter{proselinenum}
2050 \setcounter{proselinenum}{1}
2051 \newcounter{prosemodulo}
2052 \setcounter{prosemodulo}{\value{lineindexrepeat}}
2053 \addtocounter{prosemodulo}{1}
2054 \newcommand{\setprosemodulo}[1]{\modulolinenumbers[#1]}

```

Then commands for setting titles of prose sections. These are just versions of `\poemtitle`. Fancier versions will follow if there is need.

```

2055 \newcommand{\prosesectiontitle}[1]{\poemtitle{#1}}
2056 \newcommand{\prosesectiontitlenotitle}[1]{\poemtitlenotitle{#1}}

```

Next, environments for prose sections. The environment resets (or doesn't, in the second case) the marginal line number. The default modulo line number is that prevailing in verse sections, but you can change it at will.

```

2057 \setcounter{prosemodulo}{\value{lineindexrepeat}}%
2058 \addtocounter{prosemodulo}{1}%
2059 \ifx\modulolinenumbers\undefined%
2060 \relax\else
2061 \modulolinenumbers[\value{prosemodulo}]% if lineno is called
2062 \fi
2063 \newif\ifinprosesection
2064 \newenvironment{prosesection}
2065 {\inprosesectiontrue\resetlinenum\begin{linenumbers}%
2066 \renewcommand{\linenumfont}{\scriptsize}%
2067 \ifnumbersright\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
2068 %\else\ifnumbersswitch\switchlinenumbers\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
2069 \else\ifnumbersswitch\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
2070 \else\leftlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
2071 \addtolength{\linenumbersep}{5pt}% seems about right
2072 \fi\fi
2073 \noemendyettrue%
2074 \noexplainyettrue%

```

```

2075 }
2076 {\end{linenumbers}\inprosesectionfalse}
2077 \newenvironment{prosesectionnoreset}
2078 {\begin{linenumbers}%
2079 \renewcommand{\linenumberfont}{\scriptsize}
2080 \ifnumbersright\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
2081 %\else\ifnumbersswitch\switchlinenumbers\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
2082 \else\ifnumbersswitch\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
2083 \else\leftlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
2084 \addtolength{\linenumbersep}{5pt}% seems about right
2085 \fi\fi
2086 % \noemendyettrue%
2087 % \noexplainyettrue%
2088 }\end{linenumbers}}

```

Set up commands for notes sections.

`\setproselemmastart` Finds the line number at the beginning of a lemma. Thanks to Robin Fairbairns and Heiko Oberdiek for `\ifrefundefined`. Fairbairns version

```

2089 % \newcommand*\ifrefundefined[1] {%
2090 % \expandafter\ifx\csname r@#1\endcsname\relax
2091 % }
2092 % Oberdiek version
2093 \makeatletter
2094 \newcommand*\ifrefundefined}[1]{%
2095 \expandafter\ifx\csname r@#1\endcsname\relax
2096 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2097 \else
2098 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2099 \fi
2100 }
2101 \newcommand*\@extract@ref}[2]{%
2102 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter#1\csname
2103 r@#2\endcsname{}\}\@nil
2104 }
2105
2106 \newcommand*\@extractref{%
2107 \@extract@ref\@car
2108 }
2109
2110 \newcommand*\@extractpageref{%
2111 \@extract@ref\@secondcar
2112 }
2113
2114 \long\def\@secondcar#1#2#3\@nil{#2}
2115
2116 \newcommand*\setcounterfromref}[2]{%
2117 \ifrefundefined{#2}{%
2118 \protect\G@refundefinedtrue
2119 \@latex@warning{Reference ‘#2’ on page \thepage \space

```



```

2120         undefined}%
2121     \setcounter{#1}{0}%
2122 }{%
2123     \setcounter{#1}{\@extractref{#2}}%
2124 }%
2125 }
2126 \newcommand*{\setcounterfrompageref}[2]{%
2127     \ifrefundefined{#2}{%
2128         \protect\G@refundefinedtrue
2129         \@latex@warning{Reference ‘#2’ on page \thepage \space
2130             undefined}%
2131         \setcounter{#1}{0}%
2132     }{%
2133         \setcounter{#1}{\@extractpageref{#2}}%
2134     }%
2135 }
2136 %
2137 \makeatother
2138 \newcommand{\setproselemmastart}[1]{%
2139 \unskip
2140 \setcounterfromref{proselinenumber}{#1}}

```

`\setproselemmarange` Finds the end of a multi-line lemma.

```

2141 % \newcommand{\setproselemmarange}[2]{%
2142 % \setproselemmastart{#1}%
2143 % \setcounter{lemmalines}{#2}%
2144 % \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
2145 % \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theproselinenumbers}%
2146 % \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}\unskip%
2147 % }
2148 \newcommand{\setproselemmarange}[2]{%
2149 \setproselemmastart{#1}%
2150 \pmccheckifinteger{#2}%
2151 \ifinteger
2152 \setcounter{lemmalines}{#2}%
2153 \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
2154 \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theproselinenumbers}%
2155 \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}\unskip%
2156 \else
2157 % \ref{#2}
2158 \setcounterfromref{lemmaend}{#2}\rangelemmatrue
2159 \fi\unskip
2160 }

```

`\proseciterange` Sets the range note for in a multi-line lemma.

```

2161 \newcommand{\proseciterange}{%
2162 \ifrangelemma%
2163 \theproselinenumbers --\thelemmaend%
2164 \else%
2165 \theproselinenumbers%

```

2166 \fi}

\checkprosenoteheaders Updates running header for note sections. Typesets line number in notes.

```
2167 \newcommand{\checkprosenoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string{notepageholdernote\string}%
2168 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi
2169 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string{notepageholdernote\string}>
2170 \string\value\string{notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
2171 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
2172 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip
2173 \string\unskip\string\relax\ \proseciterange :\string~\string\nolinebreak}%
```

\prosetextnote

```
2174 \newcommand{\proselinelabel}[1]{\ifhmode\unskip\fi\linelabel{#1}}
2175 \newcommand{\prosetextnote}[3][0]{%
2176 \iftextnoteson%
2177 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
2178 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
2179 \immediate\write\textnotes{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
2180 \literaltextnote{#3}%
2181 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2182 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2183 \fi%
2184 \resetlemmacounters%
2185 \fi\unskip%
2186 }
```

\proseemendation Notice that it calls \firstemendation as usual.

```
2187 \newcommand{\proseemendation}[3][0]{%
2188 \ifemendationson%
2189 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
2190 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
2191 \ifredundantemendations
2192 \iftextnoteson
2193 \ifrangelemma
2194 \prosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
2195 \else
2196 \prosetextnote{#2}{#3}%
2197 \fi % ifrangelemma}
2198 \fi %iftextnoteson
2199 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2200 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2201 \fi% iftextnotessinglepar
2202 \fi % ifredundantemendations
2203 \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
2204 \firstemendation
2205 \fi%noemendyet
2206 \global\noemendyetfalse
2207 \immediate\write\emendations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
2208 \literatemend{#3}%
```

```

2209 \ifemendationssinglepar%
2210 \literatemend{\par}%
2211 \fi% ifemendationssinglep
2212     \resetlemmacounters%
2213 \fi\unskip%
2214 }

```

\proseexplanatory

```

2215 \newcommand{\proseexplanatory}[3][0]{%
2216 \ifexplanon%
2217 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
2218 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
2219     \ifnoexplainyet% firstexplanation
2220     \firstexplanatory%
2221     \fi%noexplainyet
2222     \global\noexplainyetfalse%
2223 \immediate\write\explanations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
2224     \literateexplain{#3}%
2225 \ifexplanationssinglepar%
2226     \literateexplain{\par}%
2227     \fi% ifexplanationssinglepar
2228     \resetlemmacounters%
2229 \fi\unskip%
2230 }

```

\proseaccidental

```

2231 \newcommand{\proseaccidental}[2]{
2232 \iftextnoteson
2233 \ifincludeaccidentals
2234     \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2235 \prosetextnote{#1}{#2}%
2236 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2237     \iftextnotessinglepar%
2238     \literaltextnote{\par}%
2239     \fi%
2240 \fi\fi
2241 }
2242 \newcommand{\prosetsvariant}[3][0]{\iftextnoteson
2243 \ifincludetypescripts
2244     \immediate\write
2245 \textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2246 \prosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
2247 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2248     \iftextnotessinglepar%
2249     \literaltextnote{\par}%
2250     \fi%
2251 \fi\fi
2252 }
2253 \newcommand{\prosetsaccidental}[2]{\iftextnoteson
2254 \ifincludetypescripts\proseaccidental{#1}{#2}\fi\fi}

```

## 21.20 Annotation by Sentence and Paragraph Number

Marking sentences. First, some \ifs, token lists, and counters.

```
2255 \newif{\ifprosebysentence}  
2256 \newif{\ifrunningsentencenumbers}\runningsentencenumbertrue  
2257 \newif{\ifmarginsentencenumbers}\marginsentencenumbertrue  
2258  
2259 \newtoks{\pmnoteheader}  
2260  
2261 \newcounter{pmsentencenumber}\setcounter{pmsentencenumber}{0}  
2262 \newcounter{pmmodulo}\setcounter{pmmodulo}{3}  
2263 \newcounter{pmindexcount}\setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}
```

A starter. Mostly a placeholder. For changes to a whole section.

```
2264 \newcommand{\setprosebysentence}{\prosebysentencetrue%  
2265 }  
2266 \newenvironment{pmsection}{  
2267 \noemendyettrue%  
2268 \noexplainyettrue%  
2269 }{}
```

Formatting for sentence numbers in the running text and in the margin.

```
2270 \newcommand{\runningsentencenumberformat}[1]{\nobreak%  
2271 \textsuperscript{\scriptsize{#1}}\unskip\nobreak}  
2272 \newcommand{\marginsentencenumberformat}[1]{\scriptsize{#1}}  
2273 \newcommand{\setpmmodulo}[1]{\setcounter{pmmodulo}{#1}}%  
2274 \addtocounter{pmmodulo}{-1}%  
2275 }  
2276 \newcommand{\pmnumberstoleft}{%\catcode'\@=11%  
2277 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrightfalse%  
2278 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%  
2279 }  
2280 \newcommand{\pmnumberstoright}{%\catcode'\@=11%  
2281 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrighttrue%  
2282 \setlength{\marginparsep}{-18pt}  
2283 % \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}  
2284 }  
2285 \newcommand{\pmnumbersswitch}{\strictpagechecktrue\numbersswitchtrue\numbersrightfalse%  
2286 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%  
2287 }  
2288 \newcommand{\pmnumbersgutter}{%\catcode'\@=11%  
2289 \pmnumbersswitch%  
2290 \pmclreversesideparfalse\numbersguttertrue%  
2291 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%  
2292 }  
2293 \newcommand{\pmnumbersouter}{%\catcode'\@=11%  
2294 \pmnumbersswitch%  
2295 \pmclreversesidepartrue\numbersgutterfalse%  
2296 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%  
2297 }
```

Macros for actually writing the numbers in the margin.

```

2298 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumber}{%
2299 \putpmmarginnumber{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2300 {\marginssentencenumberformat}}
2301 \newcommand{\putpmmarginnumber}[2]{%
2302 \nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}%
2303   \nolinebreak%
2304   \ifnumbersswitch%\marginpar{\hfil #2{#1}}
2305   \pmclsidepar{\hfil #2{#1}}%
2306   \else%
2307     \ifnumbersright%\marginpar{\hfil #2{#1}}
2308     \pmclrightsidepar{\hfil #2{#1}}%
2309     \else% \marginpar{#2{#1}\hfil}
2310     \pmclleftsidepar
2311 {#2{#1}\hfil}%
2312   \fi%
2313   \fi%
2314 \nolinebreak%
2315 \end{marginenvironment}}\nolinebreak%
2316 }
```

`\pmsentence` Put this before every sentence. (This is the opposite of the convention in verse sections, where `\verseline` is at the end of each line.

```

2317 \newcommand{\pmsentence}{%
2318 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2319 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2320 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2321 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2322 \fi%
2323 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2324 \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2325 \leavevmode%
2326 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}{%
2327 { \putpmsentencenumber\nobreak%
2328   \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}}%
2329 }{\relax}%
2330 \fi%
2331 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2332 \ifpmparas%
2333 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2334 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2335 \else%
2336 %\global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber:}%
2337 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}
2338 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2339 \fi%
2340 }
```

`\pmsentencetwo` Kludge for the second sentence in a line.

```

2341 \newcommand{\pmsentencetwo}{%
2342 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2343 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2344 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2345 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2346 \fi%
2347 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2348   \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2349   \leavevmode%
2350 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}{%
2351 { \putpmsentencenumbertwo\nobreak%
2352   \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2353 }{\relax}%
2354 %   \ifnum\thepmindexcount>\thepmmodulo%
2355 %     \putpmsentencenumbertwo\nobreak%
2356 %     \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2357 %   \fi%
2358 \fi%
2359 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2360 \ifmparas%
2361 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\themparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2362 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2363 \else%
2364 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2365 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2366 \fi%
2367 }
2368
2369 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumbertwo}{%
2370 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1}},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2371 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}

```

`\pmsentencethree` Kludge for the third sentence in a line.

```

2372 \newcommand{\pmsentencethree}{%
2373 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2374 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2375 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2376 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2377 \fi%
2378 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2379   \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2380   \leavevmode%
2381 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}{%
2382 { \putpmsentencenumberthree\nobreak%
2383   \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2384 }{\relax}%
2385 %   \ifnum\thepmindexcount>\thepmmodulo%
2386 %     \putpmsentencenumberthree\nobreak%
2387 %     \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2388 %   \fi%

```

```

2389 \fi%
2390 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2391 \ifmparas%
2392 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thempparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2393 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2394 \else%
2395 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2396 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2397 \fi%
2398 }
2399
2400 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumberthree}{%
2401 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1,~2},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2402 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}

```

\pmsentencefour

```

2403 \newcommand{\pmsentencefour}{%
2404 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2405 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2406 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2407 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2408 \fi%
2409 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2410 \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2411 \leavevmode%
2412 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}{%
2413 { \putpmsentencenumberfour\nobreak%
2414 \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2415 }{\relax}%
2416 \fi%
2417 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2418 \ifmparas%
2419 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thempparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2420 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2421 \else%
2422 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2423 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2424 \fi%
2425 }
2426
2427 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumberfour}{%
2428 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1,~2,~3},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2429 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}
2430

```

Macros for numbering paragraphs

```

2431 \newcounter{pmparagraph}
2432 \setcounter{pmparagraph}{0}
2433 \newif{\ifmparas}\pmparasfalse
2434 \newif{\ifmparainmar}\pmparainmartrue

```

```

2435 \newif{\ifpmpararunning}\pmpararunningfalse
2436 \newif{\ifpmsentencebypara}% reset sentence counter every paragraph
2437 \pmsentencebyparatrue

```

Formatting marginal and running paragraph numbers, printing them.

```

2438 \newcommand{\pmparmarformat}[1]{\textbf{\small #1}}
2439 \newcommand{\pmpararunningformat}[1]{\textbf{\small #1}}
2440 \newcommand{\putpmmarparanumber}{%
2441 \putpmmarginnumber{\llap{\thepmparagraph~}}{\pmparmarformat}}

```

**\pmpara** Mark the beginning of each paragraph with **\pmpara**

```

2442 \newcommand{\pmpara}{\leavevmode%
2443 \pmparastrue\addtocounter{pmparagraph}{1}%
2444 \ifpmparainmar% put in marginal paragraph number
2445 \putpmmarparanumber
2446 \fi
2447 \ifpmpararunning% put in running number
2448 \pmpararunningformat{\thepmparagraph}%
2449 \fi
2450 \ifpmsentencebypara% reset sentence counter
2451 \setcounter{pmsentencenumber}{0}%
2452 \setcounter{pmindecount}{0}%
2453 \fi}

```

**\sentencelabel** Makes a label either by sentence number or by paragraph and sentence number, for use by **\ref** and by the various notes commands.

```

2454 \makeatletter
2455 \def\sentencelabel#1{\@bsphack%
2456 \ifmparas%
2457 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
2458 {\string\newlabel{#1}{\thepmparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}{\thepage}}}%
2459 \else%
2460 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
2461 {\string\newlabel{#1}{\thepmsentencenumber}{\thepage}}}%
2462 \fi%
2463 \@esphack%
2464 }
2465 \makeatother

```

Macros to set up endnote commands for paragraph and sentence annotation.

```

2466 \newtoks{\pmrangend} % for notes that refer to ranges
2467 % setting the range for the lemma:
2468 \newcommand{\setpmlanmarange}[1]{%
2469 \pmccheckifinteger{#1}%
2470 \ifinteger%
2471 \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}%
2472 \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
2473 \setcounter{lemmaend}{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2474 \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}%
2475 \pmrangend={\thelemmaend}%

```



```

2476 \else%
2477 \pmrangeend={\ref{#1}}\rangelemmatrue%
2478 \fi%
2479 }
2480 % Setting the string to include ranges in notes:
2481 \newcommand{\pmciterange}{%
2482 \ifrangelemma{\the\pmnoteheader --\the\pmrangeend:}%
2483 \else%
2484 \the\pmnoteheader:%
2485 \fi}
2486 % For running headers
2487 \newcommand{\pmchecknoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string\notepageholdernote\string}%
2488 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi
2489 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string\notepageholdernote\string}>
2490 \string\value\string\notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
2491 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
2492 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip}
2493 % to reset lemma counters at end of note
2494 \newcommand{\pmresetlemmacounters}{\rangelemmafalse%
2495 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}%
2496 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}%
2497 \pmrangeend={\relax}%
2498 }

\pmtextnote
2499 \newcommand{\pmtextnote}[2][0]{%
2500 \iftextnoteson%
2501 \setpmlemmarange{#1}%
2502 \immediate\write\textnotes{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2503 \immediate\write\textnotes{\pmciterange}%
2504 \literaltextnote{#2}%
2505 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2506 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2507 \fi%
2508 \fi%
2509 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2510 \unskip}

\pmexplanatory
2511 \newcommand{\pmexplanatory}[2][0]{%
2512 \ifexplanon%
2513 \setpmlemmarange{#1}%
2514 \ifnoexplainyet % first explanation
2515 \firstexplanatory%
2516 \fi %noexplainyet
2517 \global\noexplainyetfalse%
2518 \immediate\write\explanations{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2519 \immediate\write\explanations{\pmciterange}%
2520 \literalexplain{#2}%
2521 \ifexplanationssinglepar%

```

```

2522 \literalexplain{\par}%
2523 \fi %ifexplanationssinglepar
2524 \fi % ifexplanon
2525 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2526 \unskip%
2527 }

```

\pmemendation

```

2528 \newcommand{\pmemendation}[2][0]{%
2529 \ifemendationson%
2530 \setpmllemmarange{#1}%
2531 \ifredundantemendations%
2532 \iftextnoteson%
2533 \ifrangelemma%
2534 \pmtextnote[#1]{#2}%
2535 \else%
2536 \pmtextnote{#2}%
2537 \fi % ifrangelemma}
2538 \fi %iftextnoteson
2539 \fi % ifredundantemendations
2540 \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
2541 \firstemendation%
2542 \fi %noemendyet
2543 \global\noemendyetfalse%
2544 \immediate\write\emendations{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2545 \immediate\write\emendations{\pmciterange}%
2546 \literalemend{#2}%
2547 \ifemendationssinglepar%
2548 \literalemend{\par}%
2549 \fi% ifemendationssinglepar
2550 \fi % ifemendationson
2551 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2552 }

```

\pmaccidental

```

2553 \newcommand{\pmaccidental}[1]{%
2554 \iftextnoteson%
2555 \ifincludeaccidentals%
2556 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2557 \pmtextnote{#1}%
2558 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2559 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2560 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2561 \fi%
2562 \fi\fi%
2563 }

```

\pmtsvariant

```

2564 \newcommand{\pmtsvariant}[2][0]{\iftextnoteson%

```

```

2565 \ifincludetypescripts%
2566   \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2567 \pmtextnote[#1]{#2}%
2568 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2569   \iftextnotessinglepar%
2570   \literaltextnote{\par}%
2571   \fi%
2572 \fi\fi%
2573 }
2574 \newcommand{\pmtsaccidental}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts\pmaccidental{#1}\fi\fi}

```

## 21.21 Using Footnotes

\texnotesatfoot has to redefine \sources and a few others as well.

```

\texnotesatfoot
2575 \newcommand{\texnotesatfoot}{% first redefine textnotes
2576 \global\texnotesontrue%
2577 \global\texnotesatendfalse%
2578 \ifsourcesfootnotespara%
2579 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{A}%
2580 \else%
2581 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{A}%
2582 \fi%
2583 \iftextfootnotespara%
2584 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}%
2585 \else%
2586 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{B}%
2587 \fi%
2588 \renewcommand{\textnote}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{##1}%
2589 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2590 \resetlemmacounters}%
2591 % then redefine sources
2592 \renewcommand{\sources}[1]{\FootnotetextA{\relax}{##1}}%
2593 % then prose textnote
2594 \renewcommand{\prosetextnote}[3][0]{%
2595 \unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2596 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
2597 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}\resetlemmacounters}%
2598 % then pmtextnote
2599 \renewcommand{\pmtextnote}[2][0]{\setpmllemmarange{##1}%
2600 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}
2601 }

\emendationsatfoot
2602 \newcommand{\emendationsatfoot}{%
2603 \global\emendationsontrue%
2604 \global\emendationsatendfalse%
2605 \ifemendationfootnotespara%

```

```

2606 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{C}%
2607 \else%
2608 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{C}%
2609 \fi%
2610 \renewcommand{\emendation}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{##1}%
2611 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2612 \resetlemmacounters}%
2613 \renewcommand{\proseemendation}[3][0]{\unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2614 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
2615 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}\resetlemmacounters}%
2616 \renewcommand{\pmemendation}[2][0]{\setpmllemmarange{##1}%
2617 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}
2618 }

```

#### \explanationsatfoot

```

2619 \newcommand{\explanationsatfoot}{%
2620 \global\explanontrue%
2621 \global\explanatendfalse%
2622 \ifexplanfootnotespara%
2623 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{D}%
2624 \else%
2625 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{D}%
2626 \fi%
2627 \renewcommand{\explanatory}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{##1}%
2628 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2629 \resetlemmacounters}%
2630 \renewcommand{\proseexplanatory}[3][0]{\unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2631 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
2632 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}}
2633 \renewcommand{\pmexplanatory}[2][0]{\setpmllemmarange{##1}%
2634 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}%
2635 }

```

#### \bibleverse

```

2636 \newcommand{\bibleverse}{\pmsentence}
2637 \newcommand{\biblechapter}{\pmpara}

```

## 21.22 Notes at the foot of individual poems

#### \poemendnote

```

2638 \newif\ifpoemendnoteson
2639 \poemendnotesontrue
2640 \newif\ifpoemendnotessinglepar
2641 \poemendnotessinglepartrue
2642 \newcommand{\makepoemendnotes}{
2643 \global\verselinenumberstrue
2644 \newwrite\poemendnotes
2645 \immediate\openout\poemendnotes=\jobname.pnd
2646 \literalpoemendnote{\bigskip}

```

```

2647 }
2648 \newcommand{\poemendnote}[2][0]{%
2649 \ifpoemendnoteson
2650   \setlemmarange{#1}%
2651   \immediate\write\poemendnotes{\checknoteheaders}
2652   \literalpoemendnote{#2}%
2653   \ifpoemendnotessinglepar%
2654   \literalpoemendnote{\par}%
2655   \fi%
2656   \fi
2657 \resetlemmacounters
2658 }
2659 \newcommand{\literalpoemendnote}[1]{%
2660   \begingroup
2661     \def\next{#1}%
2662     \newlinechar='40
2663     \immediate\write\poemendnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
2664   \endgroup
2665 }
2666 \newcommand{\putpoemendnotes}{
2667 \ifpoemendnoteson
2668   \immediate\closeout\poemendnotes
2669   \input \jobname.pnd
2670 \else
2671   \relax
2672 \fi}
2673 % \begin{macro}{\poemenddemendationnote}
2674 % \begin{macrocode}
2675 \newif\ifpoemenddemendationnoteson
2676 \poemenddemendationnotesontrue
2677 \newif\ifpoemenddemendationnotessinglepar
2678 \poemenddemendationnotessinglepartrue
2679 \newcommand{\makepoemenddemendationnotes}{
2680   \global\verselinenumberstrue
2681   \newwrite\poemenddemendationnotes
2682   \immediate\openout\poemenddemendationnotes=\jobname.pmd
2683   \literalpoemenddemendationnote{\bigskip}
2684 }
2685 \newcommand{\poemenddemendationnote}[2][0]{%
2686 \ifpoemenddemendationnoteson
2687   \setlemmarange{#1}%
2688   \immediate\write\poemenddemendationnotes{\checknoteheaders}
2689   \literalpoemenddemendationnote{#2}%
2690   \ifpoemenddemendationnotessinglepar%
2691   \literalpoemenddemendationnote{\par}%
2692   \fi%
2693   \fi
2694 \resetlemmacounters
2695 }
2696 \newcommand{\literalpoemenddemendationnote}[1]{%

```

```

2697     \begingroup
2698         \def\next{#1}%
2699         \newlinechar='40
2700         \immediate\write\poemendementationnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
2701     \endgroup
2702 }
2703 \newcommand{\putpoemendementationnotes}{
2704 \ifpoemendementationnoteson
2705     \immediate\closeout\poemendementationnotes
2706     \input \jobname.pmd
2707 \else
2708     \relax
2709 \fi}

```

\poemendexplanatorynote

```

2710 \newif\ifpoemendexplanatorynoteson
2711 \poemendexplanatorynotesontrue
2712 \newif\ifpoemendexplanatorynotessinglepar
2713 \poemendexplanatorynotessinglepartrue
2714 \newcommand{\makepoemendexplanatorynotes}{
2715     \global\verselinenumberstrue
2716     \newwrite\poemendexplanatorynotes
2717     \immediate\openout\poemendexplanatorynotes=\jobname.pxd
2718     \literalpoemendexplanatorynote{\bigskip}
2719 }
2720 \newcommand{\poemendexplanatorynote}[2][0]{%
2721 \ifpoemendexplanatorynoteson
2722     \setlemmarange{#1}%
2723     \immediate\write\poemendexplanatorynotes{\checknoteheaders}
2724     \literalpoemendexplanatorynote{#2}%
2725     \ifpoemendexplanatorynotessinglepar%
2726     \literalpoemendexplanatorynote{\par}%
2727     \fi%
2728     \fi
2729 \resetlemmacounters
2730 }
2731 \newcommand{\literalpoemendexplanatorynote}[1]{%
2732     \begingroup
2733         \def\next{#1}%
2734         \newlinechar='40
2735         \immediate\write\poemendexplanatorynotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
2736     \endgroup
2737 }
2738 \newcommand{\putpoemendexplanatorynotes}{
2739 \ifpoemendexplanatorynoteson
2740     \immediate\closeout\poemendexplanatorynotes
2741     \input \jobname.pxd
2742 \else
2743     \relax
2744 \fi}

```

`\poemendtextnote`

```

2745 \newif\ifpoemendtextnoteson
2746 \poemendtextnotesontrue
2747 \newif\ifpoemendtextnotessinglepar
2748 \poemendtextnotessinglepartrue
2749 \newcommand{\makepoemendtextnotes}{
2750   \global\verselinenumberstrue
2751   \newwrite\poemendtextnotes
2752   \immediate\openout\poemendtextnotes=\jobname.pmd
2753   \literalpoemendtextnote{\bigskip}
2754 }
2755 \newcommand{\poemendtextnote}[2][0]{%
2756 \ifpoemendtextnoteson
2757   \setlemmarange{#1}%
2758   \immediate\write\poemendtextnotes{\checknoteheaders}
2759   \literalpoemendtextnote{#2}%
2760   \ifpoemendtextnotessinglepar%
2761     \literalpoemendtextnote{\par}%
2762   \fi%
2763   \fi
2764 \resetlemmacounters
2765 }
2766 \newcommand{\literalpoemendtextnote}[1]{%
2767   \begingroup
2768     \def\next{#1}%
2769     \newlinechar='40
2770     \immediate\write\poemendtextnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
2771   \endgroup
2772 }
2773 \newcommand{\putpoemendtextnotes}{
2774 \ifpoemendtextnoteson
2775   \immediate\closeout\poemendtextnotes
2776   \input \jobname.pmd
2777 \else
2778   \relax
2779 \fi}

```

## 21.23 Embarrassing kludges

Because the dirty trick mentioned above writes out textnotes as a ribbon one word wide, quoted poetry in the notes sections will leave a blank line at the end, which will be interpreted as a paragraph break when the file is read back in by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. These kludges correct that problem.

```

2780 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectiontextnote}[1][0pt]
2781 {\iftextnoteson%
2782 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%
2783 \fi}
2784 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectionemendation}[1][0pt]
2785 {\ifemendationson%

```

```

2786 \immediate\write\emendations{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%
2787 \fi}
2788 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectionexplanatory}[1][Opt]
2789 {\ifexplanon%
2790 \immediate\write\explanations{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%
2791 \fi}

```

## 21.24 Marking stanza breaks on page turns

Use the macro below to change the symbol used to mark cases in which there is or is not a stanza break at a page turn.

```

2792 \newcommand{\stanzaatbottom}[1]{\global\edef\stanzaatbottomvalue{#1}}
2793 \stanzaatbottom{*}
2794 \newcommand{\nostanzaatbottom}[1]{\global\edef\nostanzaatbottomvalue{#1}}
2795 \nostanzaatbottom{\relax}

```

## 21.25 Parallel Texts

First, three utility macros from the memoir class:

`\cleartorecto` A repeat of `\cleardoublepage`; clears to a recto (odd-numbered) page.

```

2796 \def\cleartorecto{\clearpage\if@twoside \ifodd\c@page\else
2797 \hbox{}\thispagestyle{empty}%
2798 \newpage\if@twocolumn\hbox{}\newpage\fi\fi\fi}

```

`\cleartoverso` Clears to a verso (even-numbered) page.

```

2799 \def\cleartoverso{\clearpage\if@twoside
2800 \ifodd\c@page\hbox{}\thispagestyle{empty}%
2801 \newpage\if@twocolumn\hbox{}\newpage\fi\fi\fi}

```

`\ifenv` Macro for testing whether one is in a particular environment.

```

2802 \makeatletter
2803 \def\ifenv#1{%
2804     \def\reserved@a{#1}%
2805     \ifx\reserved@a\@currentenv
2806         \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2807     \else
2808         \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2809     \fi
2810 }
2811 \makeatother

```

Macros for forcing the marginal line numbers to the left side or the right side. These marginal line numbers, unlike those made with `\marginpar`, do not float. This code is modeled after code from the memoir class, by Peter Wilson.

`\pmcleftsidepar` As in the memoir class, these sidepars do not float.

```

2812 \newdimen\pmclsavsk

```



```

2813 \newcount\pmclsavsf
2814 \def\pmclbsphack{%
2815   \relax
2816   \ifhmode
2817     \pmclsavsk\lastskip
2818     \pmclsavsf\spacefactor
2819   \fi}
2820 \def\pmclesphack{%
2821   \relax
2822   \ifhmode
2823     \spacefactor\pmclsavsf
2824     \ifdim\pmclsavsk>0pt
2825       \ignorespaces
2826     \fi
2827   \fi}
2828 % \newcommand{\pmclleftsidepar}[1]{%
2829 % \pmclbsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
2830 %   \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2831 %     \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left
2832 %       \vbox to 0pt{%
2833 %         \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
2834 %       \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2835 %     #1%
2836 %   \end{minipage}%
2837 %     \vss}}}\pmclesphack%
2838 % } % version 2.44
2839 \newcommand{\pmclleftsidepar}[1]{%
2840 \pmclbsphack\strut\vadjust{% changed
2841 \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2842 \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth% at left
2843 %       \vbox to 0pt{%
2844 %         \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
2845 %       \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2846 \setbox0=\vtop to 0pt{% added
2847 \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
2848 #1%
2849 \end{minipage}%
2850 %       \vss}}}\pmclesphack%
2851 \vss}% changed
2852 \vtop to 0pt{\kern\pmclsideparvshift % default should be 0pt
2853 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}}\pmclesphack}% changed
2854
2855 \newcommand{\pmclrightsidepar}[1]{%
2856 % \pmclbsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
2857 % \pmclbsphack\strut\vadjust{%
2858 %   \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2859 %     \kern \textwidth \kern -\marginparsep           % at right
2860 %     \kern\textwidth\kern\marginparsep% at right
2861 %       \vbox to 0pt{%
2862 %         \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines

```

```

2863 %          \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2864 \setbox0=\vtop to Opt{% added
2865 \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
2866 #1%
2867 \end{minipage}%
2868 %          \vss}}\pmclesphack%
2869 \vss}% changed
2870 \vtop to Opt{\kern\pmclsideparvshift% default should be Opt
2871 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}\pmclesphack}% changed
2872

```

Booleans for parallel texts

```

2873 \newif\ifparalleltxts
2874 \paralleltxtsfalse
2875 \newif\ifrecto
2876 \rectofalse
2877 \newif\ifverso
2878 \versofalse

```

Booleans are needed to describe situations in which poems and stanzas are left open at the page break. `\finishrectopage` and `\finishversopage` will close poems and stanzas (so as not to generate errors because of environments left open), although as far as the poem is concerned the stanza or poem may still be open. (I will say that the stanza or poem in such a case is “artificially closed.”) There are two of them for each case of artificial closure. The first boolean (for each stanza or poem artificially closed) must reflect whether the stanza or poem has been (artificially) closed, to reopen on the next page of the same kind (recto or verso). If a poem or stanza has been (artificially) closed, the `\mark` will not be changed (so that it will still reflect whether the reader should understand there to be a stanza break at the bottom of the page or not). The second boolean for each case of artificial closure reflects whether the `\mark` has been changed or not.

```

2879 \newif\ifrectopoempending
2880 \rectopoempendingfalse
2881 \newif\ifversopoempending
2882 \versopoempendingfalse
2883 \newif\ifrectostanzapending
2884 \rectostanzapendingfalse
2885 \newif\ifversostanzapending
2886 \versostanzapendingfalse
2887 \newif\ifrectostanzastillopen
2888 \rectostanzastillopenfalse
2889 \newif\ifversostanzastillopen
2890 \versostanzastillopenfalse
2891 \newif\ifrectopoemstillopen
2892 \rectopoemstillopenfalse
2893 \newif\ifversopoemstillopen
2894 \versopoemstillopenfalse
2895 % the same for prose sections
2896 \newif\ifrectoprosesectionpending

```

```

2897 \rectoproesectionpendingfalse
2898 \newif\ifversoproesectionpending
2899 \versoproesectionpendingfalse
2900 \newif\ifrectoproesectionstilopen
2901 \rectoproesectionstilopenfalse
2902 \newif\ifversoproesectionstilopen
2903 \versoproesectionstilopenfalse
2904 % the same for quoted verse
2905 \newif\ifrectoquotedversepending
2906 \rectoquotedversependingfalse
2907 \newif\ifversoquotedversepending
2908 \versoquotedversependingfalse
2909 \newif\ifrectoquotedversestilopen
2910 \rectoquotedversestilopenfalse
2911 \newif\ifversoquotedversestilopen
2912 \versoquotedversestilopenfalse

```

A further set of booleans is required for emendations and explanatory notes. Again the idea is that if a poem is artificially closed, but has already had its first emendation or explanatory note written to the external notes files, `poemscol` will remember that the next emendation or explanatory note it sees is not the first one for that poem and thus won't set the heading information for that poem in the notes section all over again.

```

2913 \newif\ifrectoemendationspending
2914 \rectoemendationspendingfalse
2915 \newif\ifversoemendationspending
2916 \versoemendationspendingfalse
2917 \newif\ifrectoexplanationspending
2918 \rectoexplanationspendingfalse
2919 \newif\ifversoexplanationspending
2920 \versoexplanationspendingfalse

```

Counters for parallel texts: New counters are needed, not only for the recto and verso lines, but also for the scratch value which determines whether or not it is time to output a marginal line number. These are saved at the end of every page, and restored at the beginning of every page of the same kind.

```

2921 \newcounter{rectolinecounter}
2922 \setcounter{rectolinecounter}{1}
2923 \newcounter{rectoindexscratch}
2924 \setcounter{rectoindexscratch}{1}
2925 \newcounter{versolinecounter}
2926 \setcounter{versolinecounter}{1}
2927 \newcounter{versoindexscratch}
2928 \setcounter{versoindexscratch}{1}

```

`\startparalleltexts` Clears to a verso (even-numbered) page, fixes where to put line numbers, modifies poem and stanza environments, changes where marginal line numbers are set, sets the booleans.

```

2929 \newcommand{\startparalleltexts}{%
2930 \leavevmode

```

```

2931 \cleartoverso
2932 \paralleltextstrue
2933 \renewenvironment{poem}{\raggedright
2934     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
2935     \noemendyettrue
2936     \noexplainyettrue
2937     \setcounter{verselinenumber}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}
2938     \nobreak\begin{pmclverse}
2939     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}}
2940     % must end poem if parallel text. Don't worry,
2941     % begin recto page and begin verso page will
2942     % reopen the poem and reset the line counter to the right value
2943     % if it was finish recto page or finish verso page
2944     % that closed the poem rather than your own declaration.
2945 {\ifversopoemstillopen
2946     \end{pmclverse}
2947 \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2948     \else
2949     \ifrectopoemstillopen
2950     \end{pmclverse}
2951     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2952     \else
2953 \end{pmclverse}
2954     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2955     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
2956 \fi\fi
2957 \renewenvironment{stanza}{\penalty-100\instanzatrue\mark{\nostanzaatbottomvalue\ }}
2958 % must end stanza if parallel text. Don't worry,
2959 % begin recto page and begin verso page will
2960 % reopen the stanza and reset the line counter to the right value
2961 % if it was finish recto page or finish verso page
2962 % that closed the stanza rather than your own declaration.
2963 {\ifversostanzastillopen
2964     \relax
2965     \else
2966     \ifrectostanzastillopen
2967     \relax
2968     \else
2969     \nobreak\mark{\stanzaatbottomvalue\ }\nobreak
2970 \ifspeciallinelock%
2971 \relax\else%
2972 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenumber%
2973 \fi%
2974 \speciallinelockfalse%
2975 \nobreak
2976 \instanzafalse
2977
2978 \stanzaskip
2979 \fi\fi
2980 }

```

```

2981 \renewcommand{\putverselinenumber}{\nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}%
2982 \nolinebreak
2983 % \marn{\hfil\textrm{\theverselinenumber}}
2984 % \marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}
2985 \pmcleftsidepar{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
2986 \nolinebreak
2987 \end{marginenvironment}}%
2988 \nolinebreak
2989 }
2990 }
2991 \newenvironment{parallelverse}{\startparalleltexts}
2992 {\finishparalleltexts}
2993 \newtoks{\versotitleholder}
2994 \newtoks{\rectotitleholder}
2995 \newcommand{\makeversotitleholder}[1]{%
2996 \versotitleholder={#1}%
2997 }
2998 \newcommand{\makerectotitleholder}[1]{%
2999 \rectotitleholder={#1}%
3000 }

```

#### \versopoemtitle

```

3001 \makeatletter
3002 \newcommand{\versopoemtitle}[1]{%
3003 \versoset@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
3004 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
3005 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
3006 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
3007 }
3008 \newcommand{\versoset@p@emtitle}[6]{\pmclversoresetsetttitleinnotes%
3009 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
3010 {#2}%
3011 {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
3012 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1\end{center}\else #4 #1\fi}%
3013 \end{titleentryenvironment}}}%
3014 {#5}%
3015 \m@kep@emlabel
3016 \versom@ken@teholder{#1}%
3017 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}
3018 \newcommand{\versom@ken@teholder}[1]{%
3019 \ifsinglelinetitle
3020 \versotitleholder={#1}%
3021 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3022 \else\iftitlefirstline
3023 \versotitleholder={#1}%
3024 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3025 \else\iftitlemiddleline
3026 \titlesofar=\versotitleholder
3027 \titleincrement={#1}%
3028 \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%

```

```

3029 \versotitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
3030 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3031 \else
3032 \titlesofar=\versotitleholder
3033 \titleincrement={\#1}%
3034 \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
3035 \versotitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
3036 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3037 \fi
3038 \fi
3039 \fi
3040 }
3041 \newcommand{\versotitletoothernotes}{\string\par
3042 \ifputpagenumberinnotes%
3043 \string\argpageref\string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
3044 \string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle\string}%
3045 \string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
3046 \fi%
3047 \string\textbf\string{\ \the\versotitleholder\string}
3048 }%
3049 \newcommand{\versopoemtitlenocontents}[1]{%
3050 \versosetp@emtitle{\#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
3051 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
3052 }
3053 \newcommand{\versotitleinnotescheck}{\ifparalleltexts\let\titletoothernotes=\versotitletoothern
3054 \makeatother

```

\rectopoemtitle

```

3055 \makeatletter
3056 \newcommand{\rectopoemtitle}[1]{%
3057 \rectosetp@emtitle{\#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
3058 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
3059 \c@ntentsinfo{\#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
3060 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
3061 }
3062 \newcommand{\rectosetp@emtitle}[6]{\pmclrectoresetsetttitleinnotes
3063 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\#6}%
3064 {\#2}%
3065 {\#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
3066 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}\#4 \#1\end{center}\else \#4 \#1\fi}%
3067 \end{titleentryenvironment}}%
3068 {\#5}%
3069 \m@kep@emlabel
3070 \rectom@ken@teholder{\#1}%
3071 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}%
3072 \newcommand{\rectom@ken@teholder}[1]{%
3073 \ifsinglelinetitle
3074 \rectotitleholder={\#1}%
3075 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3076 \else\iftitlefirstline

```

```

3077     \rectotitleholder={#1}%
3078     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3079     \else\iftitlemiddleline
3080     \titlesofar=\rectotitleholder
3081     \titleincrement={~#1}%
3082     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
3083     \rectotitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
3084     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3085     \else
3086     \titlesofar=\rectotitleholder
3087     \titleincrement={~#1}%
3088     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
3089     \rectotitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
3090     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
3091     \fi
3092     \fi
3093     \fi
3094 }
3095 \newcommand{\rectotitletoothernotes}{\string\par
3096 \ifputpagenumberinnotes%
3097 \string\argpageref\string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
3098 \string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle\string}%
3099 \string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
3100 \fi%
3101 \string\textbf\string{\ \the\rectotitleholder\string}
3102 }%
3103 \newcommand{\rectopoemtitlenocontents}[1]{%
3104 \rectosetp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
3105 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
3106 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
3107 %{\contentsindenttwoamount}%
3108 %\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
3109 }
3110 \newcommand{\rectotitleinnotescheck}{\ifparalleltexts\let\titletoothernotes=\rectotitletoother
3111 \makeatother

```

\saveversoline   Macros for saving and restoring line numbers:

```

3112 \newcommand{\saveversoline}{\setcounter{versolinecounter}%
3113 {\value{verselinenumber}}%
3114 \setcounter{versoindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}}

```

\restoreversoline

```

3115 \newcommand{\restoreversoline}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}%
3116 {\value{versolinecounter}}%
3117 \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{versoindexscratch}}}

```

\saverectoline

```

3118 \newcommand{\saverectoline}{\setcounter{rectolinecounter}%
3119 {\value{verselinenumber}}%
3120 \setcounter{rectoindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}}

```

`\restorerectoline`

```
3121 \newcommand{\restorerectoline}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}%  
3122   {\value{rectolinecounter}}}%  
3123 \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{rectoindexscratch}}}
```

Macros for line cross references:

You will probably want to use line cross references to show which lines on the recto page correspond to which lines on the verso page. When you do this, you will set, in the margin of a line on the recto page, the line number of the corresponding line on the verso side, in square brackets. You may mark that line number with a distinctive identifier. `\synchroflag` is a token register to hold that identifier, and `\setsynchroflag` is a command to put the identifier in the register. For instance, if you are setting the 1805 version of Wordsworth's *The Prelude* on the verso, and the 1850 version on the recto, you might wish to set the "synchroflag" to "1805" so that the line cross reference will look something like "[1805: 147]".

`\setsynchroflag`

```
3124 \newtoks{\synchroflag}  
3125 \newcommand{\setsynchroflag}[1]{\synchroflag={#1}}  
3126 \setsynchroflag{\relax}
```

Here are commands for defining and calling "synchrolabels", line cross references that tie verso and recto pages:

`\synchrolabel`

```
3127 \newcommand{\synchrolabel}[1]{\poemlinelabel{#1}}  
3128 \newcommand{\hfilll}{\hskip 0pt plus 1 filll}  
3129 \newcommand{\synchroref}[1]{%  
3130 \pmcrlightsidepar{\textrm{\scriptsize[\the\synchroflag\ref{#1}]}}}%  
3131 % \hfill\rlap{\textrm{\scriptsize[\the\synchroflag\ref{#1}]}}}  
3132 % \ifnum\theprintlineindex=\thelineindexrepeat  
3133 % \hspace{-7pt}  
3134 % \fi  
3135 }
```

Finally, the `\startversopage`, `\finishversopage`, `\startrectopage` `\finishrectopage` and `\finishparalleltexts` macros:

`\startversopage`

```
3136 \newcommand{\startversopage}{  
3137 \ifrectostanzastillopen  
3138   \end{stanza}  
3139   \rectostanzastillopenfalse  
3140   \end{poem}  
3141   \rectopoemstillopenfalse  
3142 \fi  
3143 \ifrectopoemstillopen % from previous page  
3144   \end{poem}  
3145   \rectopoemstillopenfalse
```



```

3146 \fi
3147 \ifversopoempending % from previous verso
3148   \begin{poem}
3149   \global\versopoempendingfalse
3150 \fi
3151 \ifversostanzapending % from previous verso
3152   \begin{stanza}
3153   \global\versostanzapendingfalse
3154 \fi
3155 \ifversoemendationspending
3156   \noemendyetfalse
3157   \global\versoemendationspendingfalse
3158 \fi
3159 \ifversoexplanationspending
3160   \noexplainyetfalse
3161   \global\versoexplanationspendingfalse
3162 \fi
3163 \rectofalse\versotrue\restoreversoline
3164 \let\titletoothernotes=\versotitletoothernotes}

\finishversopage
3165 \newcommand{\finishversopage}{
3166 \saveversoline\versofalse\
3167 \ifinpoem
3168   \global\versopoempendingtrue
3169   \versopoemstillopenttrue
3170 \fi
3171 \ifinstanza
3172   \global\versostanzapendingtrue
3173   \versostanzastillopenttrue
3174   \global\versopoempendingtrue
3175   \versopoemstillopenttrue
3176 \fi
3177 \ifnoemendyet
3178   \relax
3179 \else
3180   \global\versoemendationspendingtrue
3181   \noemendyetfalse
3182 \fi
3183 \ifnoexplainyet
3184   \relax
3185 \else
3186   \global\versoexplanationspendingtrue
3187   \noexplainyetfalse
3188 \fi
3189 % \clearpage % keep in comment until footnotes problems are worked out
3190 }

\startrectopage

```

```

3191 \newcommand{\startrectopage}{
3192 \ifversostanzastilopen
3193   \end{stanza}
3194   \versostanzastilopenfalse
3195   \end{poem}
3196   \versopoemstilopenfalse
3197 \fi
3198 \ifversopoemstilopen
3199   \end{poem}
3200   \versopoemstilopenfalse
3201 \fi
3202 \ifrectopoempending
3203   \begin{poem}
3204   \global\rectopoempendingfalse
3205 \fi
3206 \ifrectostanzapending
3207   \begin{stanza}
3208   \global\rectostanzapendingfalse
3209 \fi
3210 \ifrectoemendationspending
3211   \noemendyetfalse
3212   \global\rectoemendationspendingfalse
3213 \fi
3214 \ifrectoexplanationspending
3215   \noexplainyetfalse
3216   \global\rectoexplanationspendingfalse
3217 \fi
3218 \versofalse\rectottrue\restorerectoline
3219 \let\titletoothernotes=\rectotitletoothernotes}

```

\finishrectopage

```

3220 \newcommand{\finishrectopage}{\saverectoline\rectofalse
3221 \ifinpoem
3222   \global\rectopoempendingtrue
3223   \rectopoemstilopentrue
3224 \fi
3225 \ifinstanza
3226   \global\rectostanzapendingtrue
3227   \rectostanzastilopentrue
3228   \global\rectopoempendingtrue
3229   \rectopoemstilopentrue
3230 \fi
3231 \ifnoemendyet
3232   \relax
3233 \else
3234   \global\rectoemendationspendingtrue
3235   \noemendyetfalse
3236 \fi
3237 \ifnoexplainyet
3238   \relax

```

```

3239 \else
3240 \global\versoexplanationspendingtrue
3241 \noexplainyetfalse
3242 \fi
3243 % \clearpage % until footnote problem is solved
3244 }

\finishparalleltxts
3245 \newcommand{\finishparalleltxts}{
3246 \ifinstanza
3247 \end{stanza}
3248 \fi
3249 \ifinpoem
3250 \end{poem}
3251 \fi
3252 \ifinprosesection
3253 \end{prosesection}
3254 \fi
3255 \ifinquotedverse
3256 \end{quotedverse}
3257 \fi
3258 \rectofalse\versofalse\paralleltxtsfalse
3259 \makeatletter\pmclresettitleinnotes\makeatother
3260 }

\makeversotextnotes Next, the versotextnotes section:
3261 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
3262 \newtoks{\versotextnotesname}
3263 \versotextnotesname={TEXTUAL NOTES}
3264 \newcommand{\changeversotextnotesname}[1]{\versotextnotesname={#1}}
3265 \newtoks{\versotextnotesheadername}
3266 \versotextnotesheadername={Textual Notes to}
3267 \newcommand{\changeversotextnotesheader}[1]{\versotextnotesheadername={#1}}
3268 \newtoks{\versotextnotescontentsname}
3269 \versotextnotescontentsname={Textual Notes}
3270 \newcommand{\changeversotextnotescontentsname}[1]{%
3271 \versotextnotescontentsname={#1}}
3272 % two column notes
3273 \newif\ifversotextnotestwocol
3274 \versotextnotestwocolfalse
3275 % versotextnotes section setup
3276 \newcommand{\makeversotextnotes}{\global\textnotesontrue
3277 \newwrite\versotextnotes
3278 \global\verselinenumberstrue
3279 \immediate\openout\versotextnotes=\jobname.vtn
3280 \literalversotextnote{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3281 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3282 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
3283 \fancyhead{}
3284 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}

```

```

3285 \fancyhead[C0]{{\small{\em \the\versotextnotesheadername~\mymarks}}}
3286 \fancyhead[CE]{{\small{\em \the\versotextnotesheadername~\mymarks}}}
3287 \fancyfoot{}
3288 \mark{3}
3289 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\versotextnotesname}{versotextnotes}
3290 \tolerance=500\language=0
3291 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3292 \ifversotextnotestwocol
3293 \begin{multicols}{2}
3294 \fi
3295 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3296 }
3297 }

```

\versotextnote

```

3298 \newif\ifversotextnotessinglepar
3299 \newif\ifnoversotextnoteyet
3300 \newcommand{\literalversotextnote}[1]{\begingroup
3301     \def\next{#1}%
3302     \newlinechar='40
3303     \immediate\write\versotextnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3304     \endgroup
3305 }
3306 \newcommand{\firstversotextnote}{\immediate\write\versotextnotes{\versotitletoothernotes}
3307     \ifversotextnotessinglepar%
3308     \literalversotextnote{\par}%
3309     \fi% ifversotextnotessinglepa
3310 }
3311 \newcommand{\versotextnote}[2][0]{\versotitleinnotescheck
3312     \setlemmarange{#1}%
3313     \ifnoversotextnoteyet % firstversotextnote
3314     \firstversotextnote
3315     \fi %noversotextnoteyet
3316     \global\ifnoversotextnoteyetfalse
3317     \immediate\write\versotextnotes{\checknoteheaders}%
3318     \literalversotextnote{#2}%
3319     \ifversotextnotessinglepar%
3320     \literalversotextnote{\par}%
3321     \fi% ifversotextnotessinglepar
3322 \resetlemmacounters
3323 }

```

\makerectotextnotes Next, the rectotextnotes section:

```

3324 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
3325 \newtoks{\rectotextnotesname}
3326 \rectotextnotesname={TEXTUAL NOTES}
3327 \newcommand{\changerectotextnotesname}[1]{\rectotextnotesname={#1}}
3328 \newtoks{\rectotextnotesheadername}
3329 \rectotextnotesheadername={Textual Notes to}
3330 \newcommand{\changerectotextnotesheader}[1]{\rectotextnotesheadername={#1}}

```

```

3331 \newtoks{\rectotextnotescontentsname}
3332 \rectotextnotescontentsname={Textual Notes}
3333 \newcommand{\changectotextnotescontentsname}[1]{%
3334 \rectotextnotescontentsname={#1}}
3335 % two column notes
3336 \newif\ifrectotextnotestwocol
3337 \rectotextnotestwocolfalse
3338 % rectotextnotes section setup
3339 \newcommand{\makectotextnotes}{\global\textnotesontrue
3340 \newwrite\rectotextnotes
3341 \global\verselinenumberstrue
3342 \immediate\openout\rectotextnotes=\jobname.rtn
3343 \literalrectotextnote{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3344 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3345 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}}
3346 \fancyhead{}
3347 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
3348 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\rectotextnotesheadname~\mymarks}}}
3349 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\rectotextnotesheadname~\mymarks}}}
3350 \fancyfoot{}
3351 \mark{3}
3352 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\rectotextnotesname}{rectotextnotes}
3353 \tolerance=500\language=0
3354 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3355 \ifrectotextnotestwocol
3356 \begin{multicols}{2}
3357 \fi
3358 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3359 }
3360 }

```

\rectotextnote

```

3361 \newif\ifrectotextnotessinglepar
3362 \newif\ifnorectotextnoteyet
3363 \newcommand{\literalrectotextnote}[1]{\begingroup
3364 \def\next{#1}%
3365 \newlinechar='40
3366 \immediate\write\rectotextnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3367 \endgroup
3368 }
3369 \newcommand{\firstrectotextnote}{\immediate\write\rectotextnotes{\rectotitletoothernotes}
3370 \ifrectotextnotessinglepar%
3371 \literalrectotextnote{\par}%
3372 \fi% ifrectotextnotessinglepar
3373 }
3374 \newcommand{\rectotextnote}[2][0]{\rectotitleinnotescheck
3375 \setlemmarange{#1}%
3376 \ifnorectotextnoteyet % firstrectotextnote
3377 \firstrectotextnote
3378 \fi %norectotextnoteyet

```

```

3379      \global\norectotextnoteyetfalse
3380 \immediate\write\rectotextnotes{\checknoteheaders}%
3381      \literalrectotextnote{#2}%
3382      \ifrectotextnotessinglepar%
3383      \literalrectotextnote{\par}%
3384      \fi% ifrectotextnotessinglepar
3385 \resetlemmacounters
3386 }

```

\makeversoemendations Next, the versoemendations section:

```

3387 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
3388 \newtoks{\versoemendationsname}
3389 \versoemendationsname={EMENDATIONS}
3390 \newcommand{\changeversoemendationsname}[1]{\versoemendationsname={#1}}
3391 \newtoks{\versoemendationsheadername}
3392 \versoemendationsheadername={Emendations to}
3393 \newcommand{\changeversoemendationsheader}[1]{\versoemendationsheadername={#1}}
3394 \newtoks{\versoemendationscontentsname}
3395 \versoemendationscontentsname={Emendations}
3396 \newcommand{\changeversoemendationscontentsname}[1]{%
3397 \versoemendationscontentsname={#1}}
3398 % two column notes
3399 \newif\ifversoemendationstwocol
3400 \versoemendationstwocolfalse
3401 % versoemendations section setup
3402 \newcommand{\makeversoemendations}{\global\emendationsontrue
3403   \newwrite\versoemendations
3404   \global\verselinenumberstrue
3405   \immediate\openout\versoemendations=\jobname.vem
3406   \literalversoemendation{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3407     {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3408 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
3409 \fancyhead{}
3410 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
3411 \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\versoemendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
3412 \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\versoemendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
3413 \fancyfoot{}
3414 \mark{3}
3415 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\versoemendationsname}{versoemendations}
3416 \tolerance=500\language=0
3417 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3418 \ifversoemendationstwocol
3419 \begin{multicols}{2}
3420 \fi
3421 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3422 }
3423 }

```

\versoemendation

```

3424 \newif\ifversoemendationssinglepar
3425 \newif\ifnoversoemendationyet
3426 \newcommand{\literalversoemendation}[1]{\begingroup
3427     \def\next{#1}%
3428     \newlinechar='40
3429     \immediate\write\versoemendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3430 \endgroup
3431 }
3432 \newcommand{\firstversoemendation}{\immediate\write\versoemendations{\versotitletoothernotes}
3433 \ifversoemendationssinglepar%
3434 \literalversoemendation{\par}%
3435 \fi% ifversoemendationssinglepar
3436 }
3437 \newcommand{\versoemendation}[2][0]{\versotitleinnotescheck%
3438 \setlemmarange{#1}%
3439 \ifnoversoemendationyet % firstversoemendation
3440 \firstversoemendation
3441 \fi %noversoemendationyet
3442 \global\noversoemendationyetfalse
3443 \immediate\write\versoemendations{\checknoteheaders}%
3444 \literalversoemendation{#2}%
3445 \ifversoemendationssinglepar%
3446 \literalversoemendation{\par}%
3447 \fi% ifversoemendationssinglepar
3448 \resetlemmacounters
3449 }

```

\makerectoemendations Next, the rectoemendations section:

```

3450 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
3451 \newtoks{\rectoemendationsname}
3452 \rectoemendationsname={EMENDATIONS}
3453 \newcommand{\changerectoemendationsname}[1]{\rectoemendationsname={#1}}
3454 \newtoks{\rectoemendationsheadername}
3455 \rectoemendationsheadername={Emendations to}
3456 \newcommand{\changerectoemendationsheader}[1]{\rectoemendationsheadername={#1}}
3457 \newtoks{\rectoemendationscontentsname}
3458 \rectoemendationscontentsname={Emendations}
3459 \newcommand{\changerectoemendationscontentsname}[1]{%
3460 \rectoemendationscontentsname={#1}}
3461 % two column notes
3462 \newif\ifrectoemendationstwocol
3463 \rectoemendationstwocolfalse
3464 % rectoemendations section setup
3465 \newcommand{\makerectoemendations}{\global\emendationsontrue
3466 \newwrite\rectoemendations
3467 \global\verselinenumberstrue
3468 \immediate\openout\rectoemendations=\jobname.rem
3469 \literalrectoemendation{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3470 {pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3471 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}

```

```

3472 \fancyhead{}
3473 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
3474 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\rectoemendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
3475 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\rectoemendationsheadername~\mymarks}}
3476 \fancyfoot{}
3477 \mark{3}
3478 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\rectoemendationsname}{rectoemendations}
3479 \tolerance=500\language=0
3480 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3481 \ifrectoemendationstwocol
3482 \begin{multicols}{2}
3483 \fi
3484 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3485 }
3486 }

```

\rectoemendation

```

3487 \newif\ifrectoemendationssinglepar
3488 \newif\ifnorectoemendationyet
3489 \newcommand{\literalrectoemendation}[1]{\begingroup
3490     \def\next{#1}%
3491     \newlinechar='40
3492     \immediate\write\rectoemendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3493     \endgroup
3494 }
3495 \newcommand{\firstrectoemendation}{\immediate\write\rectoemendations{\rectotitletoothernotes}
3496     \ifrectoemendationssinglepar%
3497     \literalrectoemendation{\par}%
3498     \fi% ifrectoemendationssinglepar
3499 }
3500 \newcommand{\rectoemendation}[2][0]{\rectotitleinnotescheck
3501     \setlemmarange{#1}%
3502     \ifnorectoemendationyet % firstrectoemendation
3503     \firstrectoemendation
3504     \fi %norectoemendationyet
3505     \global\norectoemendationyetfalse
3506     \immediate\write\rectoemendations{\checknoteheaders}%
3507     \literalrectoemendation{#2}%
3508     \ifrectoemendationssinglepar%
3509     \literalrectoemendation{\par}%
3510     \fi% ifrectoemendationssinglepar
3511 \resetlemmacounters
3512 }

```

\makeversoexplanatorynotes And the verso explanatory notes:

```

3513 % Tokens to change names of these notes
3514 \newtoks{\versoexplanationsname}
3515 \versoexplanationsname={EXPLANATORY NOTES}
3516 \newcommand{\changeversoexplanationsname}[1]{\versoexplanationsname={#1}}
3517 \newtoks{\versoexplanationsheadername}

```



```

3518 \versoexplanationsheadername={Explanatory Notes to}
3519 \newcommand{\changeversoexplanationsheader}[1]{\versoexplanationsheadername={#1}}
3520 \newtoks{\versoexplanationscontentsname}
3521 \versoexplanationscontentsname={Explanatory Notes}
3522 \newcommand{\changeversoexplanationscontentsname}[1]{%
3523 \versoexplanationscontentsname={#1}}
3524 % Two column notes
3525 \newif\ifversoexplanationstwocol
3526 \versoexplanationstwocolfalse
3527 % versoexplanatory notes setup
3528 \newcommand{\makeversoexplanatorynotes}{\global\explanontrue
3529 \global\verselinenumberstrue
3530 \newwrite\versoexplanations
3531 \immediate\openout\versoexplanations=\jobname.vex
3532 \literalversoexplain{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3533 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3534 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
3535 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}
3536 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\versoexplanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
3537 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\versoexplanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
3538 \fancyfoot{}
3539 \mark{3}
3540 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\versoexplanationsname}{versoexplanatorynotes}
3541 \tolerance=500\language=0
3542 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3543 \ifversoexplanationstwocol
3544 \begin{multicols}{2}
3545 \fi
3546 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3547 }
3548 }
3549 % \begin{macro}{\versoexplanatory}
3550 % Again, |\firstversoexplanatory| is internal, called by |\versoexplanatory|.
3551 % \begin{macrocode}
3552 \newcommand{\literalversoexplain}[1]{
3553 \begingroup
3554 \def\next{#1}%
3555 \newlinechar='40
3556 \immediate\write\versoexplanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3557 \endgroup
3558 }
3559 \newif\ifversoexplanationssinglepar
3560 \newcommand{\firstversoexplanatory}{\immediate\write\versoexplanations{\versotitletoothernotes}
3561 \ifversoexplanationssinglepar%
3562 \literalversoexplain{\par}%
3563 \fi}
3564 \newif\ifnoversoexplainyet
3565 \newcommand{\versoexplanatory}[2][0]{\versotitleinnotescheck%
3566 \ifexplanon
3567 \setlemmarange{#1}%

```

```

3568 \ifnoversoexplainyet % first versoexplanation
3569 \firstversoexplanatory
3570 \fi %noversoexplainyet
3571 \global\noversoexplainyetfalse
3572 \immediate\write\versoexplanations{\checknoteheaders}%
3573 \literalversoexplain{#2}%
3574 \ifversoexplanationssinglepar%
3575 \literalversoexplain{\par}%
3576 \fi%
3577 \fi % ifexplanon
3578 \resetlemmacounters
3579 }

```

\makerectoexplanatorynotes And the recto explanatory notes:

```

3580 % Tokens to change names of these notes
3581 \newtoks{\rectoexplanationsname}
3582 \rectoexplanationsname={EXPLANATORY NOTES}
3583 \newcommand{\changerectoexplanationsname}[1]{\rectoexplanationsname={#1}}
3584 \newtoks{\rectoexplanationsheadername}
3585 \rectoexplanationsheadername={Explanatory Notes to}
3586 \newcommand{\changerectoexplanationsheader}[1]{\rectoexplanationsheadername={#1}}
3587 \newtoks{\rectoexplanationscontentsname}
3588 \rectoexplanationscontentsname={Explanatory Notes}
3589 \newcommand{\changerectoexplanationscontentsname}[1]{%
3590 \rectoexplanationscontentsname={#1}}
3591 % Two column notes
3592 \newif\ifrectoexplanationstwocol
3593 \rectoexplanationstwocolfalse
3594 % rectoexplanatory notes setup
3595 \newcommand{\makerectoexplanatorynotes}{\global\explanontrue
3596 \global\verselinenumberstrue
3597 \newwrite\rectoexplanations
3598 \immediate\openout\rectoexplanations=\jobname.rex
3599 \literalrectoexplain{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
3600 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
3601 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
3602 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
3603 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\rectoexplanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
3604 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\rectoexplanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
3605 \fancyfoot{}
3606 \mark{3}
3607 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\rectoexplanationsname}{rectoexplanatorynotes}
3608 \tolerance=500\language=0
3609 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
3610 \ifrectoexplanationstwocol
3611 \begin{multicols}{2}
3612 \fi
3613 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
3614 }
3615 }

```

```

3616 % \begin{macro}{\rectoexplanatory}
3617 % Again, |\firstrectoexplanatory| is internal, called by |\rectoexplanatory|.
3618 % \begin{macrocode}
3619 \newcommand{\literalrectoexplain}[1]{
3620 \begingroup
3621 \def\next{#1}%
3622 \newlinechar='40
3623 \immediate\write\rectoexplanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
3624 \endgroup
3625 }
3626 \newif\ifrectoexplanationssinglepar
3627 \newcommand{\firstrectoexplanatory}{\immediate\write\rectoexplanations{\rectotitletoothernotes}
3628 \ifrectoexplanationssinglepar%
3629 \literalrectoexplain{\par}%
3630 \fi%
3631 }
3632 \newif\ifnorectoexplainyet
3633 \newcommand{\rectoexplanatory}[2][0]{\rectotitleinnotescheck%
3634 \ifexplanon
3635 \setlemmarange{#1}%
3636 \ifnorectoexplainyet % first rectoexplanation
3637 \firstrectoexplanatory
3638 \fi %norectoexplainyet
3639 \global\norectoexplainyetfalse
3640 \immediate\write\rectoexplanations{\checknoteheaders}%
3641 \literalrectoexplain{#2}%
3642 \ifrectoexplanationssinglepar%
3643 \literalrectoexplain{\par}%
3644 \fi%
3645 \fi % ifexplanon
3646 \resetlemmacounters
3647 }

```

\versoprosetextnote

```

3648 \newcommand{\versoprosetextnote}[3][0]{%
3649 \iftextnoteson%
3650 \versotitleinnotescheck
3651 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3652 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3653 \ifnoversotextnoteyet % firstversotextnote
3654 \firstversotextnote
3655 \fi %noversotextnoteyet
3656 \global\noversotextnoteyetfalse
3657 \immediate\write\versotextnotes{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3658 \literalversotextnote{#3}%
3659 \ifversotextnotessinglepar%
3660 \literalversotextnote{\par}%
3661 \fi%
3662 \resetlemmacounters%
3663 \fi\unskip%

```

3664 }

\versoprosee mendation Notice that it calls \firstemendation as usual.

```
3665 \newcommand{\versoprosee mendation}[3][0]{%
3666 \ifemendationson%
3667 \versotitleinnotescheck
3668 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3669 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3670 \ifredundantemendations
3671 \iftextnoteson
3672 \ifrangelemma
3673 \versoprosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
3674 \else
3675 \versoprosetextnote{#2}{#3}%
3676 \fi % ifrangelemma}
3677 \fi % iftextnoteson
3678 \ifversotextnotessinglepar%
3679 \literalversotextnote{\par}%
3680 \fi% iftextnotessinglepar
3681 \fi % ifredundantemendations
3682 \ifnoversoemendationyet % firstemendation
3683 \firstversoemendation
3684 \fi%noemendyet
3685 \global\noversoemendationyetfalse
3686 \immediate\write\versoemendations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3687 \literalversoemendation{#3}%
3688 \ifversoemendationssinglepar%
3689 \literalversoemendation{\par}%
3690 \fi% ifemendationssinglep
3691 \resetlemmacounters%
3692 \fi\unskip%
3693 }
```

\versoprosee explanatory

```
3694 \newcommand{\versoprosee explanatory}[3][0]{%
3695 \ifexplanon%
3696 \versotitleinnotescheck
3697 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3698 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3699 \ifnoversoexplainyet% firstexplanation
3700 \firstversoexplanatory%
3701 \fi%noexplainyet
3702 \global\noversoexplainyetfalse%
3703 \immediate\write\versoexplanations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3704 \literalversoexplain{#3}%
3705 \ifversoexplanationssinglepar%
3706 \literalversoexplain{\par}%
3707 \fi% ifexplanationssinglepar
3708 \resetlemmacounters%
3709 \fi\unskip%
```

3710 }

\rectoprosetextnote

```
3711 \newcommand{\rectoprosetextnote}[3][0]{%
3712 \iftextnoteson%
3713 \rectotitleinnotescheck
3714 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3715 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3716 \ifnorectotextnoteyet % firstrectotextnote
3717 \firstrectotextnote
3718 \fi %norectotextnoteyet
3719 \global\norectotextnoteyetfalse
3720 \immediate\write\rectotextnotes{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3721 \literalrectotextnote{#3}%
3722 \ifrectotextnotessinglepar%
3723 \literalrectotextnote{\par}%
3724 \fi%
3725 \resetlemmacounters%
3726 \fi\unskip%
3727 }
```

\rectoproseemendation Notice that it calls \firstemendation as usual.

```
3728 \newcommand{\rectoproseemendation}[3][0]{%
3729 \ifemendationson%
3730 \rectotitleinnotescheck
3731 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3732 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3733 \ifredundantemendations
3734 \iftextnoteson
3735 \ifrangelemma
3736 \rectoprosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
3737 \else
3738 \rectoprosetextnote{#2}{#3}%
3739 \fi % ifrangelemma}
3740 \fi %iftextnoteson
3741 \ifrectotextnotessinglepar%
3742 \literalrectotextnote{\par}%
3743 \fi% iftextnotessinglepar
3744 \fi % ifredundantemendations
3745 \ifnorectoemendationyet % firstemendation
3746 \firstrectoemendation
3747 \fi%noemendyet
3748 \global\norectoemendationyetfalse
3749 \immediate\write\rectoemendations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3750 \literalrectoemendation{#3}%
3751 \ifrectoemendationssinglepar%
3752 \literalrectoemendation{\par}%
3753 \fi% ifemendationssinglep
3754 \resetlemmacounters%
3755 \fi\unskip%
```

3756 }

\rectoproseexplanatory

```
3757 \newcommand{\rectoproseexplanatory}[3][0]{%
3758 \ifexplanon%
3759 \rectotitleinnotescheck
3760 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
3761 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
3762 \ifnorectoexplainyet% firstexplanation
3763 \firstrectoexplanatory%
3764 \fi%noexplainyet
3765 \global\norectoexplainyetfalse%
3766 \immediate\write\rectoexplanations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
3767 \literalrectoexplain{#3}%
3768 \ifrectoexplanationssinglepar%
3769 \literalrectoexplain{\par}%
3770 \fi% ifexplanationssinglepar
3771 \resetlemmacounters%
3772 \fi\unskip%
3773 }
```

\pmclresetsettitleinnotes

```
3774 \newcommand{\pmclresetsettitleinnotes}{%
3775 \noversoemendationyettrue%
3776 \noversoexplainyettrue%
3777 \noversotextnoteyettrue%
3778 \norectoemendationyettrue%
3779 \norectoexplainyettrue%
3780 \nrectotextnoteyettrue%
3781 }
```

\pmclversoresetsettitleinnotes

```
3782 \newcommand{\pmclversoresetsettitleinnotes}{%
3783 \noversoemendationyettrue%
3784 \noversoexplainyettrue%
3785 \noversotextnoteyettrue%
3786 }
```

\pmclrectoresetsettitleinnotes

```
3787 \newcommand{\pmclrectoresetsettitleinnotes}{%
3788 \norectoemendationyettrue%
3789 \norectoexplainyettrue%
3790 \nrectotextnoteyettrue%
3791 }
```

\literalexplain

```
3792 \let\literalexplanatory=\literalexplain
3793 \let\literalversoexplanatory=\literalversoexplain
3794 \let\literalrectoexplanatory=\literalrectoexplain
```

`\putversotextnotes` Does the same for textual notes.

```
3795 \newcommand{\putversotextnotes}{  
3796 \iftextnoteson  
3797 \ifversotextnotestwocol  
3798 \literalversotextnote{\end{multicols}}  
3799 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol  
3800 \newpage  
3801 \hyphenationforsmall  
3802 \immediate\closeout\versotextnotes  
3803 \input \jobname.vtn  
3804 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\versotextnotescontentsname}{versotextnotes}  
3805 \else  
3806 \relax  
3807 \fi}
```

`\putrectotextnotes` Does the same for recto textual notes.

```
3808 \newcommand{\putrectotextnotes}{  
3809 \iftextnoteson  
3810 \ifrectotextnotestwocol  
3811 \literalrectotextnote{\end{multicols}}  
3812 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol  
3813 \newpage  
3814 \hyphenationforsmall  
3815 \immediate\closeout\rectotextnotes  
3816 \input \jobname.rtn  
3817 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\rectotextnotescontentsname}{rectotextnotes}  
3818 \else  
3819 \relax  
3820 \fi}
```

`\putversoemendations` This macro closes external file for verso emendations, reads it in, and puts an entry for the emendations into the table of contents file. The macro tests to see whether there is an .aux file from a previous run before doing this, and complains in the .log file if the .aux file does not exist.

```
3821 \newcommand{\putversoemendations}{  
3822 \ifemendationson  
3823 \ifversoemendationstwocol  
3824 \literalversoemendation{\end{multicols}}  
3825 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol  
3826 \newpage  
3827 \hyphenationforsmall  
3828 \immediate\closeout\versoemendations  
3829 \input \jobname.vem  
3830 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\versoemendationscontentsname}{versoemendations}  
3831 \else  
3832 \relax  
3833 \fi}
```

`\putrectoemendations` This macro closes external file for recto emendations, reads it in, and puts an entry for the emendations into the table of contents file. The macro tests to see whether there is an .aux file from a previous run before doing this, and complains in the .log file if the .aux file does not exist.

```

3834 \newcommand{\putrectoemendations}{
3835 \ifemendationson
3836 \ifrectoemendationstwocol
3837 \literalrectoemendation{\end{multicols}}
3838 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
3839     \newpage
3840     \hyphenationforsmall
3841     \immediate\closeout\rectoemendations
3842     \input \jobname.rem
3843 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\rectoemendationscontentsname}{rectoemendations}
3844 \else
3845 \relax
3846 \fi}

```

`\putversoexplanatorynotes` Does the same for verso explanatory notes.

```

3847 \newcommand{\putversoexplanatorynotes}{
3848 \ifexplanon
3849 \ifversoexplanationstwocol
3850 \literalversoexplain{\end{multicols}}
3851 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
3852     \newpage
3853     \hyphenationforsmall
3854     \immediate\closeout\versoexplanations
3855     \input \jobname.vex
3856 \ifpoemcontentson
3857 \ifexplanon
3858 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\versoexplanationscontentsname}{versoexplanatorynotes}
3859 \fi
3860 \fi
3861 \else
3862 \relax
3863 \fi}

```

`\putrectoexplanatorynotes` Does the same for recto explanatory notes.

```

3864 \newcommand{\putrectoexplanatorynotes}{
3865 \ifexplanon
3866 \ifrectoexplanationstwocol
3867 \literalrectoexplain{\end{multicols}}
3868 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
3869     \newpage
3870     \hyphenationforsmall
3871     \immediate\closeout\rectoexplanations
3872     \input \jobname.rex
3873 \ifpoemcontentson
3874 \ifexplanon

```



```

3875 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\rectoexplanationscontentsname}{rectoexplanatorynotes}
3876 \fi
3877 \fi
3878 \else
3879 \relax
3880 \fi}

```

## 21.26 Parallel Texts in Prose

First, some booleans.

`\ifversopassagestillopen`

```

3881 \newif\ifversopassagestillopen
3882 \versopassagestillopenfalse
3883 \newif\ifrectopassagestillopen
3884 \rectopassagestillopenfalse

```

When the last recto page ended, was the last paragraph finished? True means the next recto should continue the paragraph from the last recto

`\ifinpara`

```

3885 \newif\ifinpara
3886 \inparafalse
3887 \newif\ifrectoparapending
3888 \rectoparapendingfalse
3889 \newif\ifrectoparaopen
3890 \rectoparaopenfalse
3891 \newif\ifversoparapending
3892 \versoparapendingfalse
3893 \newif\ifversoparaopen
3894 \versoparaopenfalse

```

Counters: `prosepage` `versoproselinecounter`, etc., and commands to set them.

`\makeprosepagelabel`

```

3895 \newcounter{prosepage}
3896 \setcounter{prosepage}{1}
3897 \newcommand{\makeprosepagelabel}{\proselinelabel{prosepageno\theprosepage}}
3898 \newcounter{versoproselinecounter}
3899 \newcommand{\saveversoproseline}{%
3900 \refstepcounter{prosepage}%
3901 \makeprosepagelabel
3902 \setcounterfromref{versoproselinecounter}{prosepageno\theprosepage}
3903 }
3904 \newcommand{\restoreversoproseline}{\setcounter{linenumber}{\value{versoproselinecounter}}}%
3905 \newcounter{rectoproselinecounter}
3906 \newcommand{\saverectoproseline}{%
3907 \refstepcounter{prosepage}%
3908 \makeprosepagelabel
3909 \setcounterfromref{rectoproselinecounter}{prosepageno\theprosepage}

```

```

3910 }
3911 \newcommand{\restorerectoproseline}{\setcounter{linenumber}%
3912 {\value{rectoproselinecounter}}}%

```

The `\parastart` and `\paraend` macros, to mark the beginning and end of paragraphs

```

\parastart
3913 \newcommand{\parastart}{\inparatrue}

```

```

\paraend
3914 \newcommand{\paraend}{\inparafalse}

```

`\startparalleltextsprose` and `\finishparalleltextsprose`

```

\startparalleltextsprose
3915 \newcommand{\startparalleltextsprose}{%
3916 \leavevmode
3917 \cleartoverso
3918 \paralleltextstrue
3919 \inparafalse
3920 }

```

```

\finishparalleltextsprose
3921 \newcommand{\finishparalleltextsprose}{%
3922 \paralleltextsfalse}

```

```

parallelprouse
3923 \newenvironment{parallelprouse}{\startparalleltextsprose} {\finishparalleltextsprose}

```

`\startversoprousepage`

```

\startversoprousepage
3924 \newcommand{\startversoprousepage}{%
3925 \let\titletoothernotes=\versotitletoothernotes
3926 \restoreversoproseline%
3927 \ifversoparapending{\inparatrue}\else{\inparafalse}\fi%
3928 \ifinpara{\noindent}\else{\relax}\fi%
3929 }

```

`\finishversoprousepage`

```

\finishversoprousepage
3930 \newcommand{\finishversoprousepage}{%
3931 \ifinpara{\versoparapendingtrue}\else{\versoparapendingfalse}\fi%
3932 \saveversoproseline%
3933 }

```

`\startrectoprousepage`

`\startrectoprosepage`

```

3934 \newcommand{\startrectoprosepage}{%
3935 \let\titletoothernotes=\rectotitletoothernotes
3936 \restorerectoproseline%
3937 \ifrectoparapending{\inparatrue}\else{\inparafalse}\fi%
3938 \ifinpara{\noindent}\else{\relax}\fi%
3939 }

```

`\finishrectoprosepage`

```

3940 \newcommand{\finishrectoprosepage}{%
3941 \ifinpara{\rectoparapendingtrue}\else{\rectoparapendingfalse}\fi%
3942 \saverectoproseline
3943 }

```

## 21.27 Finishing up

`\finish` The `\finish` macro reads in the notes, the index (previously created from your .aux file by MakeIndex), and the contents sections and sets them. The notes sections send page information to the contents file as they are set. Then the page information for the index is sent to the contents file. Finally the contents file is closed and read in. If you have an editor's introduction or a list of abbreviations, copy this macro, uncomment out the commented out lines, and issue it all as a `\renewcommand` for `\finish`. Be sure to have the command `\label{editorsintroduction}` on the first page of your introduction.

It usually takes three passes to get the table of contents and the index files correct.

The consequence of doing using `\finish` is that the table of contents comes last. There are ways around this that are described earlier. The notes sections are all typeset in the `\small` size.

```

3944 \newcommand{\finish}{
3945 \small\bf \hyphenchar\font=45
3946 \small\it \hyphenchar\font=45
3947 \small\rm \hyphenchar\font=45
3948
3949 \ifemendationson
3950     \newpage
3951     \immediate\closeout\emendations
3952     \input \jobname.emd
3953 \fi
3954 \iftextnoteson
3955     \newpage
3956     \immediate\closeout\textnotes
3957     \input \jobname.ent
3958     \newpage
3959 \fi
3960 \ifexplanon
3961     \immediate\closeout\explanations
3962     \input \jobname.enx

```

```

3963         \newpage
3964     \fi
3965     \ifindexingon
3966     \printindex
3967     \fi
3968     \ifpoemcontentson
3969 %         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\vspace{10pt}\string\par}
3970 %         \immediate\write
3971 % \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ Introduction to the Notes}
3972 %         \immediate\write
3973 % \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{editorsintroduction} \string\par}
3974 %         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
3975 %         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ Abbreviations}
3976 %         \immediate\write
3977 % \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{abbreviations} \string\par}
3978 %         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
3979     \ifemendationson
3980     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\
3981     \the\emendationscontentsname}
3982     \immediate\write
3983 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{emendationnotes} \string\par}
3984     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
3985     \fi
3986     \iftextnoteson
3987     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\
3988     \the\textnotescontentsname}
3989     \immediate\write
3990 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{textualnotes} \string\par}
3991     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
3992     \fi
3993     \ifexplanon
3994     \immediate\write
3995 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\explanationscontentsname}
3996     \immediate\write
3997 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{explanatorynotes}}
3998     \fi
3999     \ifindexingon
4000     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
4001     \immediate\write
4002 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
4003     \immediate\write
4004 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{indexpage}\string\par}
4005     \fi
4006     \immediate\closeout\poemcontents
4007     \input \jobname.ctn
4008     \fi
4009     \clearpage
4010 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
4011 \vspace{106pt}
4012 \begin{center}

```

```

4013 {\poemtitlefont Note}
4014 \end{center}
4015
4016 \noindent The symbol \stanzaatbottomvalue\ is used to indicate
4017 a space between sections of a poem
4018 wherever such spaces are lost in pagination.
4019 \cleardoublepage
4020 }

\testforauxonfirstrun Put this in the preamble. It suppresses \finish, \puttextnotes,
\putemendations, and \putexplanatory unless there is an .aux file from a pre-
vious run, this avoiding some error messages.

4021 \newcommand{\testforauxonfirstrun}{\IfFileExists{\jobname.aux}{\relax}
4022 {\let\finish=\relax
4023 \let\puttextnotes=\relax
4024 \let\putexplanatory=\relax
4025 \let\putemendations=\relax
4026 \typeout{Run again to read in endnotes files}}}

\putpoemcontents You may wish to do the tasks done by \finish separately. This will give you
more flexibility. \putpoemcontents inserts the table of contents file from a prior
run. Be sure to issue it before you issue \makepoemcontents.

4027 \newcommand{\putpoemcontents}{
4028 \IfFileExists{\jobname.ctn}{\input \jobname.ctn
4029 \clearpage \resetpagestyle\normalsize}
4030 {\typeout{Run again to input contents file here}}
4031 }

\hyphenationforsmall This command restores hyphenation for the backmatter sections of the book. Hy-
phenation is turned off in the main body of the book, because verse should not be
hyphenated. This macro turns hyphenation on, but only for small roman, italic,
and bold fonts. Backmatter sections are all set in \small. \putemendations,
\puttextnotes, and \putexplanatory all call \hyphenationforsmall.

4032 \newcommand{\hyphenationforsmall}{\small\bf \hyphenchar\font=45
4033 \small\it \hyphenchar\font=45
4034 \small\rm \hyphenchar\font=45
4035 }

\putemendations This macro closes external file for emendations, reads it in, and puts an entry for
the emendations into the table of contents file. The macro tests to see whether
there is an .aux file from a previous run before doing this, and complains in the
.log file if the .aux file does not exist.

4036 \newcommand{\putemendations}{
4037 \ifemendationson
4038 \ifemendationstwocol
4039 \literate\emend{\end{multicols}}
4040 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
4041 \newpage

```

```

4042 \hyphenationforsmall
4043 \immediate\closeout\emendations
4044 \input \jobname.emd
4045 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\emendationscontentsname}{emendationnotes}
4046 \else
4047 \relax
4048 \fi}

```

`\putexplanatory` Does the same for explanatory notes.

```

4049 \newcommand{\putexplanatory}{
4050 \ifexplanon
4051 \ifexplanationstwocol
4052 \literalexplain{\end{multicols}}
4053 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
4054 \newpage
4055 \hyphenationforsmall
4056 \immediate\closeout\explanations
4057 \input \jobname.enx
4058 \ifpoemcontentson
4059 \ifexplanon
4060 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\explanationscontentsname}{explanatorynotes}
4061 \fi
4062 \fi
4063 \else
4064 \relax
4065 \fi}

```

`\puttextnotes` Does the same for textual notes.

```

4066 \newcommand{\puttextnotes}{
4067 \iftextnoteson
4068 \iftextnotestwocol
4069 \literaltextnote{\end{multicols}}
4070 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
4071 \newpage
4072 \hyphenationforsmall
4073 \immediate\closeout\textnotes
4074 \input \jobname.ent
4075 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\textnotescontentsname}{textualnotes}
4076 \else
4077 \relax
4078 \fi}

```

`\putpoemindex` Reads in the index of titles and first lines and adds an entry for the index into the table of contents.

```

4079 \newtoks{\poemindexname}
4080 \poemindexname={Index of Titles and First Lines}
4081 \newcommand{\changeindexname}[1]{\poemindexname={#1}}
4082 \newtoks{\poemindexheadername}
4083 \poemindexheadername={Index of Titles and First Lines}

```

```

4084 \newcommand{\changeindexheader}[1]{\poemindexheadername={#1}}
4085 \newtoks{\poemindexcontentsname}
4086 \poemindexcontentsname={Index of Titles and First Lines}
4087 \newcommand{\changeindexcontentsname}[1]{\poemindexcontentsname={#1}}
4088 \newcommand{\putindex}{\ifindexingon
4089 \printindex
4090 \fi
4091 \ifpoemcontentson\ifindexingon
4092 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
4093 \immediate\write
4094 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
4095 \immediate\write
4096 \poemcontents{\string~\string\contentsleaders \string~\ \string\pageref{indexpage}\string\par}
4097 \fi\fi}
4098 \newcommand{\putmultipleindex}[4]{%
4099 \ifindexingon
4100 \poemindexname={#2}
4101 \poemindexheadername={#3}
4102 \poemindexcontentsname={#4}
4103 \poemindexlabelname={#4}
4104 \printindex[#1][#2]
4105 \fi
4106 \ifpoemcontentson\ifindexingon
4107 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
4108 \immediate\write
4109 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
4110 \immediate\write
4111 \poemcontents{\string~ \string\contentsleaders \string~\
4112 \string\pageref{\the\poemindexlabelname}\string\par}
4113 \fi\fi
4114 }
4115 \newcommand{\noteaboutstanzamarkpage}{\begin{volumetitlepage}
4116 %\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
4117 \vspace{106pt}
4118 \begin{center}
4119 {\poemtitlefont Note}
4120 \end{center}
4121
4122 \noindent The symbol \stanzaatbottomvalue\ is used to indicate
4123 a space between sections of a poem
4124 wherever such spaces are lost in pagination.
4125 \end{volumetitlepage}}

```

## 21.28 Visual formatting

The ideal in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is to separate content markup and formatting as completely as possible. In the text itself you simply mark the logical units (a poem, a title, a stanza, a textual note), and a header program like this interprets the meaning of those terms typographically. However, one still winds up having to do some

visual formatting. Sometimes you have to enlarge or shrink a page by one line in order to avoid an intractable widow or club line, and when one does so one must be careful to do the same to the other member of the two-page spread of which that page is a part. These commands enable one to wiggle pagelength enough to handle these problems.

```
4126 \newcommand{\longpage}{\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}
4127 \newcommand{\shortpage}{\enlargethispage{-\baselineskip}}
```

## 21.29 Special environments: cjquotation and theindex

An environment for special prose quotations within verse as in “Chief Joseph of the Nez Perce”

**cjquotation**

```
4128 \newenvironment{cjquotation}
4129     {\tolerance=2000%
4130     \vspace{-\bigskipamount}
4131     \restoreverselinenumber
4132     \language=255
4133     \noindent\relax
4134     \list{}{\listparindent 0em%
4135             \itemindent 0em%
4136             \rightmargin 2em%
4137             \leftmargin 2em%
4138             \topsep 0em%
4139             \parskip 0em%
4140             \itemindent \listparindent
4141             \rightmargin \leftmargin
4142             \parsep \z@ \@plus\p@}%
4143     \item[]
4144     }
4145     {\endlist}
```

**theindex** And the environment for the index:

```
4146 \newtoks{\poemindexlabelname}
4147 \poemindexlabelname={indexpage}
4148 \newcommand{\changeindexlabelname}[1]{\poemindexlabelname={#1}}
4149 \renewenvironment{theindex}
4150     {{\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
4151     \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
4152     \makeatletter
4153     \def\pmclidxitem{\par\hangindent 1em}
4154 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
4155 \fancyhead[CO]{{\small\em \the\poemindexheadername}}}
4156 \fancyhead[CE]{{\small\em \the\poemindexheadername}}}
4157 \fancyfoot{}
4158     \label{\the\poemindexlabelname}
4159     \lefthyphenmin=2\tolerance=500\language=0
4160     \normalfont \backmattertextfont
```



```

4161             \raggedright
4162             \begin{multicols}
4163 {2}[\backmattersink\begin{center}{\normalfont
4164 \backmatterheaderfont \the\poemindexname}\end{center}
4165 \backmatterafterheadersink}]%
4166             \let\item\pmclidxitem}
4167             {\end{multicols}\clearpage}
4168 \makeatother

```

Finally, some other miscellaneous environments.

```

4169 \newlength{\epigraphquoteleftmargin}
4170 \newlength{\epigraphquoterightmargin}
4171 \setlength{\epigraphquoteleftmargin}{1.5em}
4172 \setlength{\epigraphquoterightmargin}{1.5em}
4173 \newenvironment{epigraphquote}{\list{}{\rightmargin\epigraphquoterightmargin%
4174                                     \leftmargin\epigraphquoteleftmargin%
4175                                     \topsep 0pt%
4176                                     \partopsep 0pt%
4177                                     \listparindent 0pt%
4178                                     }%
4179             \item\relax}
4180             {\endlist}
4181 \newenvironment{volumetitlepagequote}{\list{}{\rightmargin \voladditionalamount%
4182                                     \leftmargin \voladditionalamount%
4183                                     \topsep 0pt%
4184                                     \partopsep 0pt%
4185                                     \listparindent 0pt
4186                                     }%
4187             \item\relax}
4188             {\endlist}

```

## Change History

v1.0	General: Initial version . . . . . 1	v1.7	General: Changed how labels are made for use in contents and notes sections. Control sequences in titles (such as for italics and so on) no longer require special commands, although those commands are retained for backward compatibility. . . . . 1
v1.01	General: Added macros for titles of poems without formal titles. Corrected typographical errors in manual. . . . . 1	v2.01	General: Rewrote all of the title macros in order to make them easier to maintain. Added environment for flushing runover lines in verse to the right margin. Added information on how to customize titles. . . . . 1
v1.1	General: Added commands to change mark in cases where page break fall (or does not fall) on stanza break. Added command to change the amount of indentation in runover lines in verse. Removed special geometry to make the program more generic. . . . . 1	v2.02	General: Corrected an error in setting poems without formal titles . . . . . 1
v1.11	General: Corrected bugs in headers for explanatory notes and emendations. . . . . 1	v2.12	General: Notes sections can take ranges of lines. . . . . 1
v1.2	General: Accidentals and typescript variants test to see whether textual notes are being made. Corrected a bug when quoting verse in note sections. Added a command to change the page number of the table of contents. Added a command to input the table of contents file. Added commands to input the external files for emendations, explanatory notes, textual notes, and the index of titles and first lines. Added a command to test whether there is an .aux file from a previous run and to prevent typesetting of the external files for emendations, explanatory notes, textual notes if there is not. Added a command to restore the main page style after the table of contents. . . . . 1	v2.13	General: tsenry no longer needs an unskip if the entry starts with a comma. . . . . 1
		v2.2	General: The user can create new kinds of endnote. . . . . 1
		v2.21	General: Cross references can refer to line numbers . . . . . 1
		v2.22	General: Removed dependence upon marn.sty. Enabled multiple levels of block-formatted footnotes . . . . 1
		v2.24	General: Macros to aid typesetting parallel texts. . . . . 1
		v2.25	General: Bug fix in running headers to notes sections . . . . . 1

v2.26	General: Fix no unskip in vertical mode error . . . . .	1	making a mess of it. Modified macros for volume titles to use the facilities for poem titles. . .	1
v2.27	General: Changed name of linelabel command, to prepare for making poemscol and lineno compatible . . . . .	1	v2.36	General: Versions of note macros for typescript variants and accidentals for annotated prose. Macros for marking up and annotating prose by paragraph and sentence number. Macros for cross references by sentence and paragraph number. . . . .
v2.30	General: Prose sections such as Authors' Introductions are line numbered by lineno.sty. Textnotes, emendations, and explanatory notes for prose sections may be either footnotes or endnotes, and the latter are sent to the same place as their verse equivalents. Good solution to "missing number" problem on first runs.	1	v2.37	General: In cases of broken lines or runover lines you can choose whether to set the line number with the beginning of the line or with the end of the line. Also, you can choose to have it set the number always at the beginning if the line number is at the left, and always at the end if it is at the right. . . . .
v2.301	General: Corrected small bug in table of contents macros, rewrote manual for clarity . . . .	1	v2.38	General: Checked cases where macros might introduce extra white space. Made sure that line numbers for verse, prose, and paragraph-sentence prose line up. Fixed overlapping of paragraph and line numbers for paragraph-sentence mode. Up to four sentences can appear on a line in paragraph-line mode without having their marginal line numbers overlap. Fixed a bug that added an extra colon in footnotes in paragraph-sentence format. Changed "gutter" and "outer" line numbering in verse and paragraph-sentence prose to use Peter Wilson's sidepars rather than marginpars. . . . .
v2.31	General: Ranges of line for notes sections (in verse or prose sections) need no longer involve counting of lines. Lemmas may be nested, may overlap, and may cross stanza boundaries. . .	1	v2.39	General: Left a DeclareOption hanging in version 2.38. Fixed that. . . . .
v2.32	General: Simpler configuration of marginal line numbers, revision of manual . . . . .	1		
v2.33	General: Fixed a bug in index generation, compensated for odd interaction between fancyhdr and reversemarginpar	1		
v2.34	General: Easier modification of format of tables of contents . . .	1		
v2.35	General: poemscol can break the lines for long titles in the table of contents on its own without making a mess of it. poemscol can break the lines for long titles on its own without			

v2.391	General: Corrections to user's guide. . . . .	1	find the depth of the line, restored line number commands to use sidepar and its variants. . . . .	1
v2.392	General: More corrections to user's guide. . . . .	1	v2.47	General: Changed name of sidepar to pcmclsidepar to avoid conflicts with the sidepar command from the memoir class, since they are no longer exactly the same. Added commands to put a marginal reference to the notes section in the margins of poem titles. . . . .
v2.394	General: More corrections to user's guide. . . . .	1	v2.48	General: Added more general form of the commands to put a marginal reference to the notes section in the margins of poem titles. . . . .
v2.4	General: Commands to make new kinds of endnotes also make notes for line numbered prose sections and for prose sections with paragraph and sentence numbering. . . . .	1	v2.49	General: Changed marginal reference command to use marginpar rather than pmclsidepar (alas, it still adds vertical white space after the title with pmclsidepar). Added marginal reference commands for sequences and sequence sections. Fixed errors in manual. . . . .
v2.41	General: Fixed a bug in line numbers of new kinds of prose note. . . . .	1	v2.50	General: Added marginal reference commands for poem sections, poem subtitles, epigraphs, and dedications. These commands no longer require an additional label command to set the label to which they refer. Added commands to make marginal references to the pages in notes sections where comments on individual lines may be found, for textual notes, explanatory notes, emendations, and user-defined notes. Added commands for changing the names of the Table of Contents, the various endnotes sections, and the running
v2.42	General: Fixed error in handling conditionals when setting prose numbered by sentence and paragraph. . . . .	1		
v2.43	General: Notes in prose numbered by sentence and paragraph number can refer only to the sentence number even when paragraphs are also being counted. . . . .	1		
v2.44	General: Fixed a bug which caused new kinds of endnotes in prose sections to add unwanted white space to the output. . . . .	1		
v2.45	General: Use of sidepar in v2.38 introduced a problem, causing line numbers sometimes to drift up a point. Changed commands for putting verse line numbers, but not paragraph and sentence numbers, to use marginpars again. . . . .	1		
v2.46	General: Changed definition of sidepar so that it uses struts to			

headers for the contents and endnotes sections, in order to facilitate editions of works in languages other than English. . . . .	1	Two column formatting for notes sections. . . . .	1
v2.51		v2.62	
General: Changed prose section environment so that it does not always assume that the modulo for line numbers in prose is the same as the number in verse. Corrected a problem with alignment of line numbers in the prosesectionnoreset environment. Added commands to support generation of multiple indices using the splitindex package. Fixed a variety of small bugs, including a newly introduced one in the correction to textual notes for quoted verse. . . . .	1	General: You can adjust the margins of epigraphs, dedications, and similar things. Made the appearance of entries in the table of contents for endnotes sections customizable. Fixed a bug which caused user-defined endnotes to put extra white space in prose passages. . . . .	1
v2.52		v2.63	
General: Changed dedication to poemdedication to avoid a conflict with a command in koma-script. dedication command is provided using providecommand for compatibility . . . . .	1	General: Revisions to manual. . . . .	1
v2.53		v2.64	
General: Changed the name of an internal token register to avoid a conflict with babel . . . . .	1	General: Bug fix: remove extra white space in custom endnotes for prose sections when notes are in single paragraph mode. Fix appearance of page number in endnote sections. . . . .	1
v2.531		v2.65	
General: Fixed a typo in example code. . . . .	1	General: Modifications to parallel text macros, corrections to manual. . . . .	1
v2.6		v2.66	
General: Added an optional argument to the poem environment to center the text block of the poem on the longest line. Added a switch to enable titles to be centered on the page. . . . .	1	General: Change to page styles . . . . .	1
v2.61		v2.7	
General: Added a boolean to switch notes to one note per paragraph form. Boolean to switch off poem titles in notes.		General: Improvements to parallel texts. . . . .	1
		v2.72	
		General: Improvements to parallel texts. Generic note types for parallel texts. corrections to manual. . . . .	1
		v2.8	
		General: Changes in default values about where line numbers are placed. verselinenumberstoleft and related commands no longer change marginparsep. Endnote sections may have normal or hanging paragraphs. Endnotes may have multiple paragraphs. . . . .	1
		v2.81	
		General: Versemarginadjust to adjust margins of the verse block. Line numbers	

automatically move closer to the text when the text block is centered on the longest line.	
New boolean to force line numbers to the margins when the text block is centered. New commands to control the distance of line numbers from margins of centered text block.	
New default values for marginparwidth and marginparsep. . . . .	1
v2.85	
General: Boolean to turn centering of verse block on and off.	
Subtitles center when centertitles is issued.	
Epigraphs and attributions move in when centertitles is issued. New boolean to adjust placement of marginal reference markers in jhtextnote and related commands. . . . .	1
v2.87	
General: Notes to appear at the end of individual poems. . . . .	1
v2.88	
General: Revisions to manual. . . .	1
v2.89	
General: Append the date to the end of the poem. . . . .	1
v2.9	
General: Date aligns with left margin of poem even when poem is centered. . . . .	1
v2.95	
General: Long poems can put firstline—lastline in running header. Revisions to manual. Textual notes, emendation notes, and explanatory notes can also be placed at the end of the poem rather than at the bottom of the page or in an endnote section. Commands to set the title only in the contents and only in the notes. . . . .	1

## Index

Numbers written in *italic* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in *roman* refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols	
\!	690
\@	87, 88, 2276, 2280, 2288, 2293
\@auxout	556, 737, 2457, 2460
\@bsphack	509, 510, 555, 736, 2455
\@car	2107
\@centercr	95, 123, 143, 161, 182, 206, 223, 241, 451, 461
\@compoundlabelscratch	1030, 1033, 1039, 1045, 1838, 1840, 3021, 3024, 3030, 3036, 3043, 3045, 3075, 3078, 3084, 3090, 3097, 3099
\@currentvir	2805
\@dblarg	508
\@esphack	547, 550, 558, 739, 2463
\@extract@ref	2101, 2107, 2111
\@extractpageref	2110, 2133
\@extractref	2106, 2123
\@firstoftwo	2096, 2806
\@ifnextchar	1821, 1822
\@ifundefined	665
\@ixpt	23
\@latex@warning	2119, 2129
\@listI	18
\@memcnta	577, 582, 583
\@minus	14, 16, 24, 26, 28, 29
\@namedef	569
\@nil	2103, 2114
\@pagemarktotextnotes	922, 930
\@plus	14–16, 24–26, 28, 29, 4142
\@pmclsidepar	508–510
\@poempagetotextnotes	928, 1090
\@poemtitletotextnotes	931, 1093
\@secondcar	2111, 2114

\@secondoftwo	..... 2098, 2808	1722, 1727, 1732, 1826, 1897,
\@setfontsize	..... 13, 23	1924, 2660, 2697, 2732, 2767,
\@unexpandable@protect	..... 563	3300, 3363, 3426, 3489, 3553, 3620
\@vsa	..... 1738	\biblechapter ..... 2637
\\	..... 95, 123, 143, 161, 182, 206, 223, 241, 451, 461, 657, 679, 692, 705, 710, 807, 1747, 1748	\bibleverse ..... <u>2636</u>
		\booksection ..... <u>932</u>
		\booksectionpage ..... <u>494</u>
		\box ..... 550, 2853, 2871
		\brokenline ..... <u>14</u> , <u>692</u> , 695, 708
		\brokenlineatbeginning ..... <u>15</u> , <u>707</u>
\_	..... 379, 383, 430, 431, 690, 992, 1787, 1842, 1940, 1942, 2173, 2957, 2969, 3047, 3101, 3166, 3971, 3973, 3975, 3977, 3980, 3983, 3987, 3990, 3995, 3997, 4002, 4004, 4016, 4094, 4096, 4109, 4111, 4122	C
A		\c@cp@cctr ..... <u>595</u>
\accidental	..... <u>23</u> , <u>1801</u> , 1820	\c@ntentsinfo .....
\addtolength	..... . 113, 117, 118, 133, 136, 152, 155, 168, 169, 175, 190, 191, 195, 199, 213, 214, 217, 230, 231, 339, 1679, 1680, 2071, 2084	. 37, 942, 955, 968, 979, 1067, 1102, 1116, 1127, 1159, 1168, 1177, 1186, 1194, 1203, 1213, 1224, 1241, 1248, 1258, 1267, 1276, 1285, 1294, 1302, 1309, 1317, 1325, 1334, 1343, 1352, 1359, 1367, 1382, 1409, 1417, 1424, 1432, 1440, 1449, 1459, 1469, 1477, 1485, 1494, 1524, 1544, 1553, 1565, 1575, 1584, 1593, 1602, 1624, 3005, 3059, 3106
\afterpoemskip	.... 67, 476, 489, 2955	\c@nterverseblock .... 115, 129, 149
\aftersequencetitleskip	..... ..... 68, 1256, 1284, 1308, 1562	\c@page ..... 553, 585, 697, 699, 725, 728, 2796, 2800
\appendtomacro	. 1896, 2019, 2022, 2025	\centertitles ..... <u>11</u> , 1051
\argpageref	929, 1013, 1838, 3043, 3097	\centertitlesontrue ..... 1051
\attribution	..... <u>30</u> , <u>1660</u>	\changecontentsheader ..... 747
B		\changecontentsname ..... <u>51</u> , 745
\backmatterafterheadersink	..... ..... 44, 764, 779, 1953, 4165	\changeemendationscontentsname . 856
\backmatterheaderfont	..... ..... 41, 762, 778, 4164	\changeemendationsheader ..... 853
\backmatterintrofont	..... 46	\changeemendationsname ..... <u>52</u> , 850
\backmattersectiontitle	..... <u>1621</u>	\changeexplanationscontentsname . 893
\backmattersink	..... ... 43, 761, 778, 1623, 1946, 4163	\changeexplanationsheader ..... 890
\backmattertextfont	..... ..... 45, 839, 877, 913, 946, 959, 970, 982, 993, 1955, 3291, 3354, 3417, 3480, 3542, 3609, 4160	\changeexplanationsname .... <u>52</u> , 887
\backmattervolumefont	..... ..... 47, 946, 959, 970, 982	\changemultiplelineabbrev ..... 382
\backmattervolumesubtitlefont	48, 992	\changemultiplepageabbrev ... <u>51</u> , 423
\baselineskip	..... 4126, 4127	\changenotesheader ..... 815
\begingroup	..... 560, 1688, 1695, 1702, 1709, 1717,	\changenotesname ..... <u>51</u> , 812
		\change poemindexcontentsname .. 4087
		\change poemindexheader ..... 4084
		\change poemindexlabelname ..... 4148
		\change poemindexname ..... <u>52</u> , 4081
		\changerect oemendationscontentsname ..... 3459
		\changerect oemendationsheader . 3456
		\changerect oemendationsname ... 3453

\changerecttoexplanationscontentsname	\contentsendnotestitle
..... 3589	.. 801, 2038, 3804, 3817, 3830,
\changerecttoexplanationsheader 3586	3843, 3858, 3875, 4045, 4060, 4075
\changerecttoexplanationsname .. 3583	\contentsentryoverrun .....
\changerecttotextnotescontentsname	... 447, 448, 454, 456, 1068, 1080
..... 3333	\contentsindentfive .....
\changerecttotextnotesheader 50, 3330	82
\changerecttotextnotesname .. 50, 3327	\contentsindentfiveamount ... 81,
\changesinglelineabbrev ..... 380	82, 1450, 1460, 1470, 1478, 1485
\changesinglepageabbrev .... 51, 421	\contentsindentfour .....
\changetextnotescontentsname ... 818	. 80, 1449, 1459, 1469, 1477, 1485
\changeversoemendationscontentsname	\contentsindentfouramount . 79, 80,
..... 3396	1204, 1214, 1242, 1335, 1344,
\changeversoemendationsheader . 3393	1410, 1417, 1425, 1433, 1441, 1495
\changeversoemendationsname ... 3390	\contentsindentone .....
\changeversoexplanationscontentsname	74,
..... 3522	797, 968, 979, 1102, 1116, 1127,
\changeversoexplanationsheader 3519	1159, 1248, 1258, 1267, 1524,
\changeversoexplanationsname .. 3516	1544, 1553, 1565, 3005, 3059, 3106
\changeversotextnotescontentsname	\contentsindentoneamount .....
..... 3270	..... 73, 74, 448, 943, 956, 1081
\changeversotextnotesheader ... 3267	\contentsindentthree .....
\changeversotextnotesname ..... 3264	78,
\checknoteheaders .....	1203, 1213, 1241, 1334, 1343,
..... 1781, 1793, 1863, 1882,	1409, 1417, 1424, 1432, 1440, 1494
1976, 2651, 2688, 2723, 2758,	\contentsindentthreeamount .....
3317, 3380, 3443, 3506, 3572, 3640	..... 77, 78, 1169, 1178,
\checkoddpages ..... 511, 578	1187, 1195, 1225, 1277, 1286,
\checkprosenoteheaders .....	1295, 1303, 1310, 1318, 1326,
. 1991, 2167, 2179, 2207, 2223,	1368, 1383, 1576, 1585, 1594, 1603
3657, 3686, 3703, 3720, 3749, 3766	\contentsindenttwo .....
\citerange 1771, 1787, 2589, 2611, 2628	.. 76, 1168, 1177, 1186, 1194,
\cjquotation ..... 4128	1224, 1276, 1285, 1294, 1302,
\cleardoublepage .....	1309, 1317, 1325, 1352, 1359,
. 417, 495, 498, 500, 501, 753,	1367, 1382, 1575, 1584, 1593, 1602
828, 867, 904, 1932, 3281, 3344,	\contentsindenttwoamount .....
3407, 3470, 3533, 3600, 4019, 4150	..... 75, 76, 969,
\clearempydoublepage ..... 417	980, 1103, 1117, 1128, 1160,
\clearpage 495, 753, 827, 866, 903,	1249, 1259, 1268, 1525, 1545,
998, 1931, 2796, 2799, 3189,	1554, 1566, 1625, 3006, 3060, 3107
3243, 3280, 3343, 3406, 3469,	\contentsleaders .....
3532, 3599, 4009, 4029, 4150, 4167	..... 786, 1064, 1072, 4096, 4111
\cleartorecto ..... 2796	\contentspoemtitlefont .....
\cleartoverso ..... 2799, 2931, 3917	..... 52, 798, 1102, 1116,
\clubpenalty ..... 54	1127, 1159, 1168, 1177, 1186,
\columnsep ..... 60	1194, 1203, 1213, 1224, 1241,
\columnwidth ..... 531	1248, 1294, 1302, 1317, 1325,
\contentsendnotesdefaults .. 782, 802	1334, 1343, 1352, 1359, 1367,
\contentsendnotesfont .. 21, 798, 802	1382, 1409, 1417, 1424, 1432,
\contentsendnotesindent 21, 797, 802	1440, 1449, 1459, 1469, 1477,
	1485, 1494, 1524, 1544, 1553,
	1575, 1584, 1593, 1602, 1624,





<code>\explanations</code> . . . . .	901, 902, 1649, 1705, 1729, 1882, 1892, 2223, 2518, 2519, 2790, 3961, 4056
<code>\explanationsatfoot</code> . . . . .	<u>2619</u>
<code>\explanationscontentsname</code> . . . . .	891, 892, 894, 3995, 4060
<code>\explanationsheadername</code> . . . . .	888–890, 907, 908
<code>\explanationsname</code> . . . . .	885–887, 911
<code>\explanationstwocolfalse</code> . . . . .	897
<code>\explanatory</code> . . . . .	<u>22</u> , <u>1874</u> , 2627
<code>\explanfootnotesparafalse</code> . . . . .	329
<code>\explanontrue</code> . . . . .	899, 2620, 3528, 3595
<b>F</b>	
<code>\fancyhfoffset</code> . . . . .	344, 356, 391
<code>\finish</code> . . . . .	<u>17</u> , <u>29</u> , <u>3944</u> , 4022
<code>\finishparalleltextprose</code> . . . . .	<u>51</u>
<code>\finishparalleltxts</code> . . . . .	<u>47</u> , 2992, <u>3245</u>
<code>\finishparalleltxtsprose</code> . . . . .	<u>3921</u> , 3923
<code>\finishrectopage</code> . . . . .	<u>48</u> , <u>3220</u>
<code>\finishrectoprosepage</code> . . . . .	<u>51</u> , <u>3940</u>
<code>\finishversopage</code> . . . . .	<u>48</u> , <u>3165</u>
<code>\finishversoprosepage</code> . . . . .	<u>51</u> , <u>3930</u>
<code>\firstemendation</code> 1860, 1871, 2204, 2541	
<code>\firstexplanatory</code> . . . . .	1879, 1891, 2220, 2515
<code>\firstlinesettings</code> . . . . .	38, 949, 1132, 1156, 1191, 1264, 1322, 1363, 1437, 1491
<code>\firstrectoemendation</code> 3495, 3503, 3746	
<code>\firstrectoexplanatory</code> . . . . .	3617, 3627, 3637, 3763
<code>\firstrectotextnote</code> . . . . .	3369, 3377, 3717
<code>\firstversoemendation</code> 3432, 3440, 3683	
<code>\firstversoexplanatory</code> . . . . .	3550, 3560, 3569, 3700
<code>\firstversotextnote</code> . . . . .	3306, 3314, 3654
<code>\flushbottom</code> 752, 827, 866, 903, 1931, 3280, 3343, 3406, 3469, 3532, 3599	
<code>\font</code> . . . . .	3945–3947, 4032–4034
<code>\FootnotetextA</code> . . . . .	2592
<code>\FootnotetextB</code> . . . . .	2589, 2597, 2600
<code>\FootnotetextC</code> . . . . .	2611, 2615, 2617
<code>\FootnotetextD</code> . . . . .	2628, 2632, 2634
<code>\fulltitleholder</code> . . . . .	268, 1029, 1032, 1035, 1038, 1041, 1044, 1842
<b>G</b>	
<code>\G@refundefinedtrue</code> . . . . .	2118, 2128
<code>\gdef</code> . . . . .	553
<code>\geometry</code> . . . . .	1
<code>\gobm</code> . . . . .	1748
<code>\goodbreak</code> 476, 489, 941, 945, 1002, 2955	
<b>H</b>	
<code>\hangindent</code> . . . . .	4153
<code>\headnote</code> . . . . .	<u>30</u> , <u>1660</u>
<code>\headoffsetlength</code> . . . . .	337–339, 344, 356, 391
<code>\hfill</code> . . . . .	3131
<code>\hfilll</code> . . . . .	3128
<code>\hfuzz</code> . . . . .	58
<code>\hour</code> . . . . .	<u>690</u>
<code>\hskip</code> . . . . .	689, 3128
<code>\ht</code> . . . . .	550, 2853, 2871
<code>\hyphenationforsmall</code> . . . . .	2031, 3801, 3814, 3827, 3840, 3853, 3870, <u>4032</u> , 4042, 4055, 4072
<code>\hyphenchar</code> . . . . .	3945–3947, 4032–4034
<b>I</b>	
<code>\if</code> . . . . .	1956, 1964
<code>\if@firstcolumn</code> . . . . .	528
<code>\if@nobreak</code> . . . . .	567
<code>\if@twocolumn</code> . . . . .	527, 2798, 2801
<code>\if@twoside</code> . . . . .	593, 2796, 2799
<code>\ifcat</code> . . . . .	1739
<code>\ifcentertitleson</code> . . . . .	770, 1050, 1056, 1514, 3012, 3066
<code>\ifdim</code> 127, 147, 165, 187, 210, 227, 2824	
<code>\ifemendationfootnotespara</code> . . . . .	27, 326, 2605
<code>\ifemendationsatend</code> . . . . .	318, 1694, 1721, 1871
<code>\ifemendationson</code> . . . . .	277, 1653, 1845, 2188, 2529, 2785, 3666, 3729, 3822, 3835, 3949, 3979, 4037
<code>\ifemendationssinglepar</code> . . . . .	1843, 1865, 2209, 2547
<code>\ifemendationssingplepar</code> . . . . .	<u>20</u>
<code>\ifemendationstwocol</code> <u>21</u> , 859, 878, 4038	
<code>\ifenv</code> . . . . .	<u>2802</u>
<code>\ifexplanatend</code> . . . . .	320, 1701, 1726, 1891
<code>\ifexplanationssinglepar</code> . . . . .	<u>20</u> , 1874, 1884, 2225, 2521
<code>\ifexplanationstwocol</code> . . . . .	<u>21</u> , 896, 914, 4051
<code>\ifexplanfootnotespara</code> . . . . .	27, 328, 2622

\ifexplanon .....	276, 1648,	\ifpmclreversesidepar .	513, 522, <u>588</u>
1876, 2216, 2512, 2789, 3566,		\ifpmclsideparswitch .....	512, <u>588</u>
3634, 3695, 3758, 3848, 3857,		\ifpmparainmar .....	2434, 2444
3865, 3874, 3960, 3993, 4050, 4059		\ifpmpararunning .....	2435, 2447
\IfFileExists .....	4021, 4028	\ifmparas .....	
\ifhmode .....		2332, 2360, 2391, 2418, 2433, 2456	
1782, 2168, 2174, 2488, 2816, 2822		\ifpmsentencebypara .....	2436, 2450
\ifincludeaccidentals .....		\ifpoemcontentson .	273, 782, 987,
..... 284, 1803, 2233, 2555		1001, 1067, 1708, 1731, 2037,	
\ifincludetypescripts .	286, 1814,	3856, 3873, 3968, 4058, 4091, 4106	
1820, 1821, 2243, 2254, 2565, 2574		\ifpoemendemendationnoteson ....	
\ifindexingon .....	279, 281,	..... 2675, 2686, 2704	
3965, 3999, 4088, 4091, 4099, 4106		\ifpoemendemendationnotessinglepar	
\ifinpara <u>3885</u> , 3928, 3931, 3938, 3941		..... 2677, 2690	
\ifinpoem .....	272, 3167, 3221, 3249	\ifpoemendexplanatorynoteson ...	
\ifinprosesection .....	2063, 3252	..... 2710, 2721, 2739	
\ifinquotedverse .....	238, 3255	\ifpoemendexplanatorynotessinglepar	
\ifinstanza ....	271, 3171, 3225, 3246	..... 2712, 2725	
\ifinteger ....	1745, 1762, 2151, 2470	\ifpoemendnoteson ..	2638, 2649, 2667
\iflastcontentsline .....	296	\ifpoemendnotessinglepar .....	
\iflastpoemcentered .....	120, 1682	..... 28, 2640, 2653	
\iflinenumberscenteredwithverse .		\ifpoemendtextnoteson 2745, 2756, 2774	
..... 100, 119, 170, 192		\ifpoemendtextnotessinglepar ...	
\iflongpoemon .....	659, 663	..... 28, 2747, 2760	
\ifmarginsentencenumbers .....		\ifprosebysentence .....	2255
.... 2257, 2323, 2347, 2378, 2409		\ifputpagenumberincontents .....	
\ifmargrefstomargin .....	1634, 1637	..... 298, 785, 1071	
\ifmiddlecontentsline .....	294	\ifputpagenumberinnotes .....	
\ifnoemendyet .....		..... 300, 1089, 1837, 3042, 3096	
290, 1859, 2203, 2540, 3177, 3231		\ifputtitleinnotes .....	1084, 1092
\ifnoexplainyet .....		\ifrangelemma ....	312, 1772, 1849,
291, 1878, 2219, 2514, 3183, 3237		2162, 2193, 2482, 2533, 3672, 3735	
\ifnoectoemendationyet .....		\ifrecto .....	2875
..... 3488, 3502, 3745		\ifrectoemendationspending 2913, 3210	
\ifnoectoexplainyet 3632, 3636, 3762		\ifrectoemendationssinglepar ...	
\ifnoectotextnoteyet 3362, 3376, 3716		..... 3487, 3496, 3508, 3751	
\ifnoversoemendationyet .....		\ifrectoemendationstwocol .....	
..... 3425, 3439, 3682		..... 3462, 3481, 3836	
\ifnoversoexplainyet 3564, 3568, 3699		\ifrectoexplanationspending ....	
\ifnoversotextnoteyet 3299, 3313, 3653		..... 2917, 3214	
\ifnum ....	668, 1739, 2354, 2385, 3132	\ifrectoexplanationssinglepar ..	
\ifnumbersgutter .....	617, 696, 724	..... 3626, 3628, 3642, 3768	
\ifnumbersright .....	507,	\ifrectoexplanationstwocol .....	
629, 636, 701, 730, 2067, 2080, 2307		..... 3592, 3610, 3866	
\ifnumbersswitch 506, 627, 634, 695,		\ifrectoparaopen .....	3889
722, 2068, 2069, 2081, 2082, 2304		\ifrectoparapending .....	3887, 3937
\ifodd .....	583,	\ifrectopassagestilopen .....	3883
585, 697, 699, 725, 728, 2796, 2800		\ifrectopoempending .....	2879, 3202
\ifoddpage .....	514, 534, 545, <u>595</u>	\ifrectopoemstilopen 2891, 2949, 3143	
\ifparalleltxts ...	2873, 3053, 3110	\ifrectoprosesectionpending ...	2896

\ifrectoprosesectionstilopen .	2900	\ifversoemendationssinglepar ...	
\ifrectoquotedversepending ....	2905	.....	3424, 3433, 3445, 3688
\ifrectoquotedversestilopen ..	2909	\ifversoemendationstwocol .....	
\ifrectostanzapending ...	2883, 3206	.....	3399, 3418, 3823
\ifrectostanzastilopen .....		\ifversoexplanationspending ....	
.....	2887, 2966, 3137	.....	2919, 3159
\ifrectotextnotessinglepar .....		\ifversoexplanationssinglepar ..	
.....	3361, 3370, 3382, 3722, 3741	.....	3559, 3561, 3574, 3705
\ifrectotextnotestwocol .....		\ifversoexplanationstwocol .....	
.....	3336, 3355, 3810	.....	3525, 3543, 3849
\ifredundantemendations .....		\ifversoparaopen .....	3893
.....	288, 1847, 2191, 2531, 3670, 3733	\ifversoparapending .....	3891, 3927
\ifrefundefined	2089, 2094, 2117, 2127	\ifversopassagestilopen .....	<u>3881</u>
\ifrfv .....	247, 253, 254	\ifversopoempending .....	2881, 3147
\ifrunningsentencenumbers .....		\ifversopoemstilopen	2893, 2945, 3198
.....	2256, 2320, 2344, 2375, 2406	\ifversoprosesectionpending ...	2898
\ifsinglelinetitle .....		\ifversoprosesectionstilopen .	2902
.....	302, 1016, 1028, 3019, 3073	\ifversoquotedversepending ....	2907
\ifsourcesfootnotespara	27, 324, 2578	\ifversoquotedversestilopen ..	2911
\ifspeciallinelock	431, 650, 652, 2970	\ifversostanzapending ...	2885, 3151
\ifstrictpagecheck .....	580, <u>595</u>	\ifversostanzastilopen .....	
\iftextcenteringturnedon .....		.....	2889, 2963, 3192
.....	11, 109, 128, 148, 186	\ifversotextnotessinglepar .....	
\iftextfootnotespara ..	27, 322, 2583	.....	3298, 3307, 3319, 3659, 3678
\iftextnotesatend .....		\ifversotextnotestwocol .....	
.....	316, 991, 1004, 1087,	.....	3273, 3292, 3797
1687, 1716, 1804, 1806, 1815, 1817		\ifvmode .....	567
\iftextnoteson .....	274,	\ifx ..	571, 1748, 2059, 2090, 2095, 2805
.....	991, 1004, 1086, 1643, 1791,	\ignorespaces .....	689, 2825
.....	1802, 1813, 1820, 1821, 1825,	\includeaccidentalstrue .....	285
.....	1848, 2176, 2192, 2232, 2242,	\includetypescriptstrue .....	287
.....	2253, 2500, 2532, 2554, 2564,	\incrementverselinenumber .....	
.....	2574, 2781, 3649, 3671, 3712,	.....	433, 654, 661, 697, 699,
.....	3734, 3796, 3809, 3954, 3986, 4067	.....	702, 709, 717, 725, 728, 731, 2972
\iftextnotessinglepar ..	20, 1789,	\indentrunoververse .....	250
.....	1795, 1807, 1831, 1854, 2181,	\indexingontrue .....	18, 280
.....	2199, 2237, 2248, 2505, 2559, 2569	\inparafalse .....	
\iftextnotestwocol .	21, 820, 840, 4068	.....	3886, 3914, 3919, 3927, 3937
\iftextnotetwocol	3799, 3812, 3825,	\inparatrue .....	3913, 3927, 3937
.....	3838, 3851, 3868, 4040, 4053, 4070	\inpoemfalse	475, 488, 2947, 2951, 2954
\iftitlefirstline .....		\inpoemtrue .....	473, 486, 2939
.....	304, 1019, 1031, 3022, 3076	\inprosesectionfalse .....	2076
\iftitlelastline .....	308	\inprosesectiontrue .....	2065
\iftitlemiddleline .....		\inquotedversefalse .....	245
.....	306, 1034, 3025, 3079	\inquotedversetrue .....	240
\iftwocol .....	2034	\instanzafalse .....	437, 2976
\ifverselinenumbers .....	275, 669	\instanzatrue .....	430, 2957
\ifverserightflush .....	310	\integerfalse .....	1742
\ifverso .....	2877	\integertrue .....	1740
\ifversoemendationspending	2915, 3155	\interjectiontitlefirstline ...	1503

<code>\interjectiontitlelastline</code> . . . .	1505	<code>\list</code> . . .	96, 124, 144, 162, 183, 207, 224, 242, 452, 462, 4134, 4173, 4181
<code>\interjectiontitlemiddleline</code> . .	1508	<code>\literalcontents</code> . . . . .	752, 765, 784, 790, 941, 944, 957, 981, 988, 1002, 1070, 1076, 1708
<code>\itemsep</code> . . . . .	30, 96, 124, 144, 162, 183, 207, 224, 242, 454, 464	<code>\literalcontentsshort</code> . . . . .	1731
<b>J</b>		<code>\literalemend</code> . . . .	866, 1694, 1864, 1866, 2208, 2210, 2546, 2548, 4039
<code>\JHdedication</code> . . . . .	1615	<code>\literalemendshort</code> . . . . .	1721
<code>\JHepigraph</code> . . . . .	1618	<code>\literalexplain</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 903, 1701, 1883, 1885, 2224, 2226, 2520, 2522, <u>3792</u> , 4052
<code>\JHlabel</code> . . . . .	1538, 1543, 1552, 1558, 1563, 1574, 1583, 1592, 1601, 1610, 1616, 1619	<code>\literalexplainshort</code> . . . . .	1726
<code>\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle</code> . . . . .	1598	<code>\literalexplanatory</code> . . . . .	3792
<code>\JHpoemsectiontitle</code> . . . . .	1589	<code>\literalpoemendemendationnote</code> . .	. . . . . 2683, 2689, 2691, 2696
<code>\JHpoemsubtitle</code> . . . . .	1613	<code>\literalpoemendexplanatorynote</code> .	. . . . . 2718, 2724, 2726, 2731
<code>\JHpoemtitle</code> . . . . .	<u>34</u> , <u>1537</u>	<code>\literalpoemendnote</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 2646, 2652, 2654, 2659
<code>\JHprosesectiontitle</code> . . . . .	1549	<code>\literalpoemendtextnote</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 2753, 2759, 2761, 2766
<code>\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle</code> . .	1580	<code>\literalrectoemendation</code> 3469, 3489, 3497, 3507, 3509, 3750, 3752, 3837	
<code>\JHsequencesections subtitle</code> 1607, 1613		<code>\literalrectoexplain</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 3599, 3619, 3629, 3641, 3643, 3767, 3769, 3794, 3867
<code>\JHsequencesectiontitle</code> . . . . .	1571	<code>\literalrectoexplanatory</code> . . . . .	3794
<code>\JHsequencetitle</code> . . . . .	<u>1560</u>	<code>\literalrectotextnote</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 3343, 3363, 3371, 3381, 3383, 3721, 3723, 3742, 3811
<b>K</b>		<code>\literaltextnote</code> 827, 931, 945, 958, 1687, 1794, 1796, 1808, 1832, 1855, 2180, 2182, 2200, 2238, 2249, 2504, 2506, 2560, 2570, 4069	
<code>\keeptitlestraight</code> . . . . .	48	<code>\literaltextnoteshort</code> . . . . .	1715
<b>L</b>		<code>\literalversoemendation</code> 3406, 3426, 3434, 3444, 3446, 3687, 3689, 3824	
<code>\language</code> . . . . .	450, 460, 468, 481, 764, 838, 876, 912, 1954, 2934, 3290, 3353, 3416, 3479, 3541, 3608, 4132, 4159	<code>\literalversoexplain</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 3532, 3552, 3562, 3573, 3575, 3704, 3706, 3793, 3850
<code>\lastcontentslinefalse</code> . . . . .	297	<code>\literalversoexplanatory</code> . . . . .	3793
<code>\lastlinesettings</code> . . . . .	38, 973, 1142, 1174, 1209, 1282, 1340, 1455	<code>\literalversotextnote</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 3280, 3300, 3308, 3318, 3320, 3658, 3660, 3679, 3798
<code>\lastpoemcenteredfalse</code> . . . . .	122	<code>\llap</code> . . . . .	2441
<code>\lastpoemcenteredtrue</code> . . . . .	130	<code>\long</code> . . . . .	509, 510, 559, 1896, 2114
<code>\lastskip</code> . . . . .	2817	<code>\longpage</code> . . . . .	38, 4126
<code>\lefthead</code> . . . . .	<u>19</u> , <u>332</u>	<code>\longpoem</code> . . . . .	<u>388</u>
<code>\lefthyphenmin</code> . .	764, 779, 1953, 4159	<code>\longpoemonfalse</code> . . . . .	660
<code>\leftlinenumber</code> . . . . .	2070, 2083		
<code>\leftskip</code> . . . . .	491–493		
<code>\linebend</code> . . . . .	<u>13</u> , <u>679</u>		
<code>\linelabel</code> . . . . .	2174		
<code>\linenumberfont</code> . . . . .	2066, 2079		
<code>\linenumbercenteredwithverse</code> . .	<u>11</u>		
<code>\linenumbercenteredwithversetrue</code>	. . . . . 101		
<code>\linenumbersep</code> .	2067–2071, 2080–2084		
<code>\linenumber</code> . . . . .	644		
<code>\linewidth</code> . . . . .	116, 121, 127, 142, 147, 160, 165, 167, 181, 187, 189, 210, 212, 222, 227, 229, 479, 1678		

M	
<code>\m@ken@teholder</code> . . . . .	
1027, 1060, 1121, 1247, 1518, 1535	
<code>\m@kep@emlabel</code> . . . . .	1016, 1059,
1120, 1246, 1517, 1534, 3015, 3069	
<code>\maintitlepage</code> . . . . .	<u>494</u>
<code>\maintitlepage</code> (environment) . . . . .	19
<code>\makeemendations</code> . . . . .	20, <u>847</u>
<code>\makeexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	20, <u>884</u>
<code>\makeindex</code> . . . . .	282
<code>\makelinenumbers</code> . . . . .	315
<code>\makemargreflabel</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	1633, 1644, 1649, 1654, 2045
<code>\makepoemcontents</code> . . . . .	16, <u>741</u>
<code>\makepoemendementationnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2679
<code>\makepoemendexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2714
<code>\makepoemendnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2642
<code>\makepoemendtextnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2749
<code>\makepoemlabel</code> . . . . .	1012, 1018, 1021
<code>\makeprosepagelabel</code> . . . . .	<u>3895</u>
<code>\makerectoemendations</code> . . . . .	49, <u>3450</u>
<code>\makerectoexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	49, <u>3580</u>
<code>\makerectotextnotes</code> . . . . .	49
<code>\makerectotextnotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3324</u>
<code>\makerectotitleholder</code> . . . . .	2998
<code>\maketextnotes</code> . . . . .	20, <u>766</u>
<code>\makeversolinenumbers</code> . . . . .	12, 314, 315
<code>\makeversoemendations</code> . . . . .	<u>3387</u>
<code>\makeversoexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3513</u>
<code>\makeversotextnotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3261</u>
<code>\makeversotitleholder</code> . . . . .	2995
<code>\marginpar</code> . . . . .	
627, 629, 631, 643, 1559, 1637,	
1640, 1658, 2304, 2307, 2309, 2984	
<code>\marginparsep</code> 112, 113, 171, 179, 192,	
204, 504, 529, 531, 535, 537,	
605, 609, 614, 2067–2070, 2080–	
2083, 2278, 2282, 2283, 2286,	
2291, 2296, 2831, 2842, 2859, 2860	
<code>\marginparsepmin</code> 103, 104, 113, 171, 192	
<code>\marginparwidth</code> . . . . .	505, 529, 537,
542, 544, 606, 610, 615, 2831,	
2834, 2842, 2845, 2847, 2863, 2865	
<code>\margincenternumberformat</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	2272, 2300, 2371, 2402, 2429
<code>\margincenternumberstrue</code> . . . . .	2257
<code>\margrefemendation</code> . . . . .	24, 35, 1652
<code>\margrefexplanatory</code> . . . . .	24, 35, 1647
<code>\margrefmarker</code> . . . . .	
1559, 1630–1632, 1637, 1640, 1658	
<code>\margrefspecial</code> . . . . .	1657
<code>\margrefstomarginfalse</code> . . . . .	1635
<code>\margreftextnote</code> . . . . .	24, 35, <u>1628</u>
<code>\mark</code> 430, 431, 473, 475, 486, 488, 836,	
874, 910, 925, 1785, 1786, 1945,	
2171, 2172, 2491, 2492, 2939,	
2947, 2951, 2954, 2957, 2969,	
3288, 3351, 3414, 3477, 3539, 3606	
<code>\marksthe</code> . . . . .	663, 665
<code>\marn</code> . . . . .	642, 2983
<code>\meaning</code> . . . . .	1691, 1698, 1705, 1712,
1719, 1724, 1729, 1733, 1829,	
1927, 2663, 2700, 2735, 2770,	
3303, 3366, 3429, 3492, 3556, 3623	
<code>\meta</code> . . . . .	1747
<code>\middlecontentslinefalse</code> . . . . .	295
<code>\middlelinesettings</code> . . . . .	38, 962,
1137, 1165, 1200, 1273, 1331, 1446	
<code>\missingpunct</code> . . . . .	22, 1736
<code>\modulolinenumbers</code> . . . . .	2054, 2059, 2061
<code>\multilinesequencepenalty</code> . . . . .	86, 1265
<code>\multilinetitlepenalty</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	84, 1157, 1192, 1323, 1438
<code>\multiplelineabbrev</code> . . . . .	381–383, 387
<code>\multiplepageabbrev</code> . . . . .	422–424, 428
<code>\mymarks</code> . . . . .	<u>419</u> , 833, 834, 871,
872, 907, 908, 1940, 1942, 3285,	
3286, 3348, 3349, 3411, 3412,	
3474, 3475, 3536, 3537, 3603, 3604	
<code>\myversemarks</code> . . . . .	<u>378</u> , 394, 395
N	
<code>\newcount</code> . . . . .	577, 2813
<code>\newlabel</code> . . . . .	738, 2458, 2461
<code>\newlength</code> . . . . .	103, 106, 337, 447,
457, 478, 600, 805, 1675, 4169, 4170	
<code>\newlinechar</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	1690, 1697, 1704, 1711, 1827,
1926, 2662, 2699, 2734, 2769,	
3302, 3365, 3428, 3491, 3555, 3622	
<code>\newpage</code> . . . . .	417, 497, 501, 503,
2031, 2798, 2801, 3800, 3813,	
3826, 3839, 3852, 3869, 3950,	
3955, 3958, 3963, 4041, 4054, 4071	
<code>\newpmemlabel</code> . . . . .	557, <u>569</u>
<code>\newtoks</code> . . . . .	268–
270, 378, 381, 419, 422, 741,	
743, 810, 813, 816, 848, 851,	
854, 885, 888, 891, 1630, 2259,	
2466, 2993, 2994, 3124, 3262,	

3265, 3268, 3325, 3328, 3331, 3388, 3391, 3394, 3451, 3454, 3457, 3514, 3517, 3520, 3581, 3584, 3587, 4079, 4082, 4085, 4146	\noversoexplainyettrue .. 3776, 3784
\next ..... 1689, 1691, 1696, 1698, 1703, 1705, 1710, 1712, 1718, 1719, 1723, 1724, 1728, 1729, 1733, 1828, 1829, 1925, 1927, 2661, 2663, 2698, 2700, 2733, 2735, 2768, 2770, 3301, 3303, 3364, 3366, 3427, 3429, 3490, 3492, 3554, 3556, 3621, 3623	\noversotextnoteyetfalse . 3316, 3656 \noversotextnoteyettrue . 3777, 3785 \numbersgutterfalse ... 617, 624, 2295 \numbersguttertrue ..... 620, 2290 \numbersrightfalse ..... ..... 507, 607, 616, 2277, 2285 \numbersrighttrue ..... 611, 2281 \numbersswitchfalse ..... ..... 506, 607, 611, 2277, 2281 \numbersswitchtrue ..... 616, 2285
\noemendyetfalse ..... 1862, 2206, 2543, 3156, 3181, 3211, 3235	<b>O</b>
\noemendyettrue ..... 292, 469, 482, 2073, 2086, 2267, 2935	\oddpagfalse ..... 515, 523, 579 \oddpagtrue ..... 517, 521, 583, 585 \oldleftskip ..... 491, 493
\noexplainyetfalse ..... 1881, 2222, 2517, 3160, 3187, 3215, 3241	<b>P</b>
\noexplainyettrue ..... 293, 470, 483, 2074, 2087, 2268, 2936	\pagestyle{fancy} ..... 337 \pagestyle{main} ..... 353 \paraend ..... 51, 3914 \parallelprose ..... 51, 3923 \paralleltextsfalse . 2874, 3258, 3922 \paralleltextstrue ..... 2932, 3918 parallelverse (environment) ..... 47 \parastart ..... 51, 3913 \parindent 65, 339, 526, 843, 881, 917, 1958, 1959, 2830, 2841, 2858, 3295, 3358, 3421, 3484, 3546, 3613
\noindent ..... 2782, 2786, 2790, 3928, 3938, 4016, 4122, 4133	\parsep ..... 29, 30, 4142 \parskip ..... 4139 \partopsep ..... 453, 463, 4176, 4184 \penalty ..... 55–57, 83–86, 430, 2957 \phantom ..... 693, 2370, 2401, 2428 \plain ..... 372 \pmaccidental ..... 46, 2553, 2574 \pmccheckifinteger ..... ..... 1737, 1761, 2150, 2469 \pmcgobm ..... 1739, 1746–1748, 1753 \pmchecknoteheaders ..... ..... 2006, 2487, 2502, 2518, 2544 \pmciterange ..... 2007, 2481, 2503, 2519, 2545, 2600, 2617, 2634 \pmclbsphack ..... ..... 2814, 2829, 2840, 2856, 2857 \pmclcontentsheader ..... ..... 743, 744, 748, 758, 759 \pmclcontentsname . 741, 742, 746, 763 \pmclesphack ..... 2820, 2837, 2850, 2853, 2868, 2871
\nopagebreak ..... 1615, 1617, 1618, 1620, 1660, 1661, 1663–1666	
\norectoemendationyetfalse 3505, 3748 \norectoemendationyettrue 3778, 3788 \norectoexplainyetfalse . 3639, 3765 \norectoexplainyettrue .. 3779, 3789 \norectotextnoteyetfalse . 3379, 3719 \norectotextnoteyettrue . 3780, 3790 \normalfont ..... 752, 762, 839, 877, 913, 1955, 3291, 3354, 3417, 3480, 3542, 3609, 4160, 4163	
\nostanzaatbottom .... 12, 2794, 2795 \nostanzaatbottomvalue 430, 2794, 2957 \noteaboutstanzamarkpage ..... 4115 \noteheaderconcat ..... .. 2333, 2334, 2336–2338, 2361, 2362, 2364, 2365, 2392, 2393, 2395, 2396, 2419, 2420, 2422, 2423	
\noteindentation ..... 805, 806, 808 \noteparbreak ..... 21, 807 \notesheadernam .. 813–815, 833, 834 \notespoemclubpenalty ..... 55, 1088 \notessequenceclubpenalty ..... 56 \notesvolumetitlepenalty ..... ..... 57, 945, 958, 1005	
\noversoemendationyetfalse 3442, 3685 \noversoemendationyettrue 3775, 3783 \noversoexplainyetfalse . 3571, 3702	

<code>\pmclidxitem</code> .....	4153, 4166	<code>\pmsentencetwo</code> .....	45, <u>2341</u>
<code>\pmclleftsidepar</code> .....	638, 2310, <u>2812</u> , 2985	<code>\pmsparainmartrue</code> .....	45
<code>\pmclnotesname</code> .....	810–812, 837	<code>\pmtextrnote</code> .....	46,
<code>\pmclrectoresetsettitleinnotes</code> .....	3062, <u>3787</u>	2499, 2534, 2536, 2557, 2567, 2599	
<code>\pmclresetsettitleinnotes</code> .....	3259, <u>3774</u>	<code>\pmtsaccidental</code> .....	46, 2574
<code>\pmclreversesideparfalse</code> .....	589, 619, 2290	<code>\pmtsvariant</code> .....	46, <u>2564</u>
<code>\pmclreversesidepartrue</code> .....	590, 623, 2295	<code>\poem</code> .....	<u>467</u>
<code>\pmclrightsidepar</code> .....	636, 645, 2308, 2855, 3130	<code>poem (environment)</code> .....	11
<code>\pmclsavsf</code> .....	2813, 2818, 2823	<code>\poemcontents</code> .....	750, 751,
<code>\pmclsavsk</code> .....	2812, 2817, 2824	783, 786, 787, 792, 793, 1068,	
<code>\pmclsidepar</code> .....	<u>508</u> , 634, 2305	1069, 1072, 1073, 1078–1080,	
<code>\pmclsideparswitchfalse</code> .....	592	1712, 1733, 3969, 3971, 3973–	
<code>\pmclsideparswitchtrue</code> .....	593, 616	3975, 3977, 3978, 3980, 3983,	
<code>\pmclsideparvshift</code> .....	541, 549,	3984, 3987, 3990, 3991, 3995,	
600, 2833, 2844, 2852, 2862, 2870		3997, 4000, 4002, 4004, 4006,	
<code>\pmclversoresetsettitleinnotes</code> .....	3008, <u>3782</u>	4092, 4094, 4096, 4107, 4109, 4111	
<code>\pmmemendation</code> .....	46, <u>2528</u> , 2616	<code>\poemcontentsontrue</code> .....	749
<code>\pmmemlabel</code> .....	555, 581	<code>\poemdate</code> .....	30, 1674, 1681, 1682
<code>\pmmemlabelref</code> .....	569, 582	<code>\poemdedication</code> .....	30, <u>1660</u>
<code>\pmmemprotected@write</code> .....	556, <u>559</u>	<code>\poemdotfill</code> .....	429
<code>\pmmexplanatory</code> .....	46, <u>2511</u> , 2633	<code>\poemendemendationnote</code> .....	28, 2673, 2685
<code>\pmnoteheader</code> .....	2259, 2334, 2338, 2362, 2365,	<code>\poemendemendationnotes</code> .....	2681, 2682, 2688, 2700, 2705
2393, 2396, 2420, 2423, 2482, 2484		<code>\poemendemendationnotesontrue</code> .....	2676
<code>\pmnumbersgutter</code> .....	45, 2288	<code>\poemendemendationnotessinglepartrue</code> .....	2678
<code>\pmnumbersouter</code> .....	45, 2293	<code>\poemendexplanatorynote</code> ...	28, <u>2710</u>
<code>\pmnumbersswitch</code> ...	2285, 2289, 2294	<code>\poemendexplanatorynotes</code> .....	2716, 2717, 2723, 2735, 2740
<code>\pmnumberstoleft</code> .....	45, 2276	<code>\poemendexplanatorynotesontrue</code> .....	2711
<code>\pmnumberstoright</code> .....	45, 2280	<code>\poemendexplanatorynotessinglepartrue</code> .....	2713
<code>\pmmpara</code> .....	45, <u>2442</u> , 2637	<code>\poemendnote</code> .....	28, <u>2638</u>
<code>\pmmparainmartrue</code> .....	2434	<code>\poemendnotes</code> .....	2644, 2645, 2651, 2663, 2668
<code>\pmmpararunningfalse</code> .....	2435	<code>\poemendnotesontrue</code> .....	2639
<code>\pmmpararunningformat</code> ..	46, 2439, 2448	<code>\poemendnotessinglepartrue</code> ....	2641
<code>\pmmpararunningtrue</code> .....	45	<code>\poemendtextnote</code> .....	28, <u>2745</u>
<code>\pmmparasfalse</code> .....	2433	<code>\poemendtextnotes</code> .....	2751, 2752, 2758, 2770, 2775
<code>\pmmparastrue</code> .....	2443	<code>\poemendtextnotesontrue</code> .....	2746
<code>\pmmparmarformat</code> .....	46, 2438, 2441	<code>\poemendtextnotessinglepartrue</code> .....	2748
<code>\pmmrangeend</code> .....	2466, 2475, 2477, 2482, 2497	<code>\poemfirstsectiontitle</code> .....	1220
<code>\pmmresetlemmacounters</code> .....	2012, 2494,	<code>\poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle</code> .....	1228
2509, 2525, 2551, 2600, 2617, 2634		<code>\poemindexcontentsname</code> .....	4002, 4085–4087, 4094, 4102, 4109
<code>\pmmsection</code> .....	44	<code>\poemindexheadername</code> .....	4082–4084, 4101, 4155, 4156
<code>\pmsentence</code> .....	45, <u>2317</u> , 2636	<code>\poemindexlabelname</code> .....	4103, 4112, 4146–4148, 4158
<code>\pmsentencebypara</code> .....	45		
<code>\pmsentencebyparatrue</code> .....	2437		
<code>\pmsentencefour</code> .....	45, <u>2403</u>		
<code>\pmsentencethree</code> .....	45, <u>2372</u>		



<code>\poemindexname</code> .	4079–4081, 4100, 4164	<code>\prosesectiontitle</code> . . . . .	42, 2055
<code>\poemlinelabel</code> . . . . .	15, <u>736</u> , 3127	<code>\prosesectiontitlenotitle</code> . . . . .	2056
<code>\poemsectionbaretitle</code> . . . . .	<u>1218</u>	<code>\prosetextnote</code> . . . . .	43,
<code>\poemsectiontitle</code> . . . . .	31, <u>1182</u>		2174, 2194, 2196, 2235, 2246, 2594
<code>\poemsectiontitlebaretitle</code> . . . . .	1232	<code>\prosetsaccidental</code> . . . . .	44, 2253
<code>\poemsectiontitlefirstline</code> . . . . .	<u>1182</u>	<code>\prosetsvariant</code> . . . . .	44, 2242
<code>\poemsectiontitlelastline</code> . . . . .	<u>1182</u>	<code>\protect</code> . . . . .	563, 2118, 2128
<code>\poemsectiontitlemiddleline</code> . . . . .	<u>1182</u>	<code>\protected@edef</code> . . . . .	1738
<code>\poemsectiontitlenocontents</code> . . . . .	<u>1218</u>	<code>\protected@write</code> . . . . .	737, 2457, 2460
<code>\poemsubsectiontitle</code> . . . . .	<u>1218</u>	<code>\providecommand</code> . . . . .	555, 569, 570, 1667
<code>\poemsubtitle</code> . . . . .	10, <u>1386</u>	<code>\putemendations</code> . . . . .	17, 29, 4025, <u>4036</u>
<code>\poemtitle</code> . . . . .	10, <u>1014</u> , 1131, 2055	<code>\putexplanatory</code> . . . . .	17, 29, 4024, <u>4049</u>
<code>\poemtitlebaretitle</code> . . . . .	36, 1111	<code>\putmultiplepoemindex</code> . . . . .	17, 29, 4098
<code>\poemtitlefirstline</code> . . . . .	31, <u>1132</u>	<code>\putpagenumberincontentsfalse</code> . . . . .	939, 953,
<code>\poemtitlefont</code> 38, 1100, 1107, 1112,			966, 977, 1134, 1139, 1257, 1564
1125, 1157, 1166, 1175, 1291,		<code>\putpagenumberincontentstrue</code> . . . . .	299, 947, 960,
1299, 1314, 1323, 1332, 1341,			971, 983, 1144, 1148, 1260, 1567
1349, 1356, 1364, 1379, 1402,		<code>\putpagenumberinnotesfalse</code> . . . . .	21, 940, 954, 967, 978, 1140, 1145
1522, 1541, 1550, 1572, 1581,		<code>\putpagenumberinnotestru</code> . . . . .	301, 948, 961, 972, 984, 1135, 1147
3003, 3050, 3057, 3104, 4013, 4119		<code>\putpmmarginnumber</code> . . . . .	2299, 2301, 2370, 2401, 2428, 2441
<code>\poemtitleitalic</code> . . . . .	<u>1130</u>	<code>\putpmmarparanumber</code> . . . . .	2440, 2445
<code>\poemtitleitalic{}{} </code> . . . . .	36	<code>\putpmsentencenumber</code> . . . . .	2298, 2327
<code>\poemtitlelastline</code> . . . . .	31, <u>1132</u>	<code>\putpmsentencenumberfour</code> . . . . .	2413, 2427
<code>\poemtitlemiddleline</code> . . . . .	31, <u>1132</u>	<code>\putpmsentencenumberthree</code> . . . . .	2382, 2386, 2400
<code>\poemtitlenocontents</code> . . . . .	36, 1106	<code>\putpmsentencenumbertwo</code> . . . . .	2351, 2355, 2369
<code>\poemtitlenonotes</code> . . . . .	36, 1124	<code>\putpoemcontents</code> . . . . .	16, <u>4027</u>
<code>\poemtitlenotitle</code> . . . . .	35, 36, <u>1218</u> , 2056	<code>\putpoemendemendationnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2703
<code>\poemtitlenotitleitalic</code> . . . . .	<u>1218</u>	<code>\putpoemendexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2738
<code>\poemtitlenotitleitalic{}{} </code> . . . . .	36	<code>\putpoemendnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2666
<code>\poemtitleonlycontents</code> . . . . .	36, 1115	<code>\putpoemendtextnotes</code> . . . . .	28, 2773
<code>\poemtitleonlynotes</code> . . . . .	36, 1119	<code>\putpoemindex</code> . . . . .	17, 18, 29, <u>4079</u>
<code>\poemtitlepenalty</code> . . . . .		<code>\putrectoemendations</code> . . . . .	<u>3834</u>
83, 778, 1100, 1107, 1112, 1125,		<code>\putrectoexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3864</u>
1183, 1233, 1238, 1291, 1314,		<code>\putrectotextnotes</code> . . . . .	50, <u>3808</u>
1356, 1402, 1406, 1414, 1465,		<code>\puttextnotes</code> . . . . .	17, 29, 4023, <u>4066</u>
1474, 1522, 1541, 1550, 1572,		<code>\puttitleinnotesfalse</code> . . . . .	21
1590, 1622, 3003, 3050, 3057, 3104		<code>\puttitleinnotestru</code> . . . . .	1085
<code>\printindex</code> . . . . .	3966, 4089, 4104	<code>\putverselinenumber</code> . . . . .	625, 670, 2981
<code>\proseaccidental</code> . . . . .	44, <u>2231</u>	<code>\putversoemendations</code> . . . . .	<u>3821</u>
<code>\prosebysentencetrue</code> . . . . .	2264	<code>\putversoexplanatorynotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3847</u>
<code>\proseciterange</code> . . . . .		<code>\putversotextnotes</code> . . . . .	<u>3795</u>
. . . . .	<u>2161</u> , 2173, 2597, 2615, 2632		
<code>\proseemendation</code> . . . . .	<u>2187</u> , 2613		
<code>\proseexplanatory</code> . . . . .	43, <u>2215</u> , 2630		
<code>\proselinelabel</code> . . . . .			
. . . . .	43, 1985, 2174, 2177, 2189,		
	2217, 2595, 2613, 2630, 3651,		
	3668, 3697, 3714, 3731, 3760, 3897		
<code>\proseemendation</code> . . . . .	43		
<code>\prosesection</code> . . . . .	42		

<b>Q</b>	
\quotedverse . . . . .	31
\quotedversecorrectionemendation . . . . .	2784
\quotedversecorrectionexplanatory . . . . .	2788
\quotedversecorrectiontextnote . . . . .	23, 2780
<b>R</b>	
\raggedright 467, 480, 1674, 2933, 4161	
\rangelemmafalse . . . . .	313, 1756, 1764, 1777, 2144, 2153, 2472, 2494
\rangelemmatrue . . . . .	1756, 1764, 1768, 2144, 2153, 2158, 2472, 2477
\rectoemendation . . . . .	49, 3487
\rectoemendations . . . . .	3466, 3468, 3492, 3495, 3506, 3749, 3841
\rectoemendationscontentsname . . . . .	3457, 3458, 3460, 3843
\rectoemendationsheadername . . . . .	3454–3456, 3474, 3475
\rectoemendationsname 3451–3453, 3478	
\rectoemendationspendingfalse . . . . .	2914, 3212
\rectoemendationspendingtrue . . . . .	3234
\rectoemendationstwocolfalse . . . . .	3463
\rectoexplanations . . . . .	3597, 3598, 3623, 3627, 3640, 3766, 3871
\rectoexplanationscontentsname . . . . .	3587, 3588, 3590, 3875
\rectoexplanationsheadername . . . . .	3584–3586, 3603, 3604
\rectoexplanationsname . . . . .	3581–3583, 3607
\rectoexplanationspendingfalse . . . . .	2918, 3216
\rectoexplanationstwocolfalse . . . . .	3593
\rectoexplanatory 49, 3616, 3617, 3633	
\rectofalse . . . . .	2876, 3163, 3220, 3258
\rectom@ken@teholder . . . . .	3070, 3072
\rectoparaopenfalse . . . . .	3890
\rectoparapendingfalse . . . . .	3888, 3941
\rectoparapendingtrue . . . . .	3941
\rectopassagestilopenfalse . . . . .	3884
\rectopoempendingfalse . . . . .	2880, 3204
\rectopoempendingtrue . . . . .	3222, 3228
\rectopoemstilopenfalse . . . . .	2892, 3141, 3145
\rectopoemstilopentrue . . . . .	3223, 3229
\rectopoemtitle . . . . .	48, 3055
\rectopoemtitlenocontents . . . . .	48, 3103
\rectoproseemendation . . . . .	3728
\rectoproseexplanatory . . . . .	3757
\rectoprosesectionpendingfalse . . . . .	2897
\rectoprosesectionstilopenfalse . . . . .	2901
\rectoprosetextnote . . . . .	3711, 3736, 3738
\rectoquotedversependingfalse . . . . .	2906
\rectoquotedversestilopenfalse . . . . .	2910
\rectoset@p@emtitle . . . . .	3057, 3062, 3104
\rectostanzapendingfalse . . . . .	2884, 3208
\rectostanzapendingtrue . . . . .	3226
\rectostanzastilopenfalse . . . . .	2888, 3139
\rectostanzastilopentrue . . . . .	3227
\rectotextnote . . . . .	49
\rectotextnote . . . . .	3361
\rectotextnotes . . . . .	3340, 3342, 3366, 3369, 3380, 3720, 3815
\rectotextnotescontentsname . . . . .	3331, 3332, 3334, 3817
\rectotextnotesheadername . . . . .	3328–3330, 3348, 3349
\rectotextnotesname . . . . .	3325–3327, 3352
\rectotextnotessinglepar . . . . .	50
\rectotextnotestwocol . . . . .	50
\rectotextnotestwocolfalse . . . . .	3337
\rectotitleholder 2994, 2999, 3074, 3077, 3080, 3083, 3086, 3089, 3101	
\rectotitleinnotescheck . . . . .	3110, 3374, 3500, 3633, 3713, 3730, 3759
\rectotitletoothernotes . . . . .	3095, 3110, 3219, 3369, 3495, 3627, 3935
\rectotrue . . . . .	3218
\redundantemendationsfalse . . . . .	289
\ref . . . . .	2157, 2477, 3130, 3131
\refstepcounter . . . . .	3900, 3907
\reserved@a . . . . .	564, 565, 2804, 2805
\resetlemmacounters . . . . .	1777, 1799, 1869, 1888, 1981, 1997, 2184, 2212, 2228, 2590, 2597, 2612, 2615, 2629, 2657, 2694, 2729, 2764, 3322, 3385, 3448, 3511, 3578, 3646, 3662, 3691, 3708, 3725, 3754, 3771
\resetlinenumber . . . . .	2065
\resetpagestyle . . . . .	406, 4029
\resettitleinnotes . . . . .	49
\restorerectoline . . . . .	3121, 3218
\restorerectoproseline . . . . .	3911, 3936

<code>\restoresinglelinesettings</code> . . . . .	<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes</code>
. . . . . 38, 1147, 1162,	. . . . . 1378
1171, 1180, 1197, 1206, 1216,	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectionmiddleline</code>
1270, 1279, 1288, 1328, 1337,	. . . . . 1509
1346, 1370, 1443, 1452, 1462, 1497	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitle</code> . 1420
<code>\restoreverselinenumber</code> 30, 682, 4131	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline</code>
<code>\restoreversoline</code> . . . . . 3115, 3163	. . . . . 1490, 1504
<code>\restoreversoproseline</code> . . 3904, 3926	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline</code>
<code>\rfvfalse</code> . . . . . 248, 250	. . . . . 1501, 1506
<code>\rfvtrue</code> . . . . . 249	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline</code>
<code>\rightflushrunoververse</code> . . . . . 249	. . . . . 1499
<code>\rightflushverse</code> . . . . . 491	<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents</code>
<code>rightflushverse</code> (environment) . . . 15	. . . . . 1428
<code>\righthead</code> . . . . . 19, 336	<code>\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents</code>
<code>\rightlinenumber</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 1481
. . . . . 2067, 2069, 2080, 2082	<code>\sequencesectionsubtitle</code> . . . . . 1386
<code>\rightmargin</code> . . . . . 97, 115, 132, 135,	<code>\sequencesectiontitle</code> . 31, 1290, 1398
151, 154, 166, 174, 188, 194,	<code>\sequencesectiontitlebaretitle</code> 1401
198, 211, 216, 228, 233, 243,	<code>\sequencesectiontitlefirstline</code> .
455, 465, 4136, 4141, 4173, 4181	. . . . . 1321, 1400
<code>\rightversebegin</code> . . . . . 15, 688	<code>\sequencesectiontitlefirstlineitalic</code>
<code>\rlap</code> . . . . . 526, 2370,	. . . . . 1399
2401, 2428, 2830, 2841, 2858, 3131	<code>\sequencesectiontitleitalic</code> . . 1397
<code>\runningsentencenumberformat</code> . . .	<code>\sequencesectiontitleitalicnonotes</code>
. . . . 2270, 2321, 2345, 2376, 2407	. . . . . 1394
<code>\runningsentencenumberstrue</code> . . 2256	<code>\sequencesectiontitlelastline</code> . .
<code>\runoverindent</code> . . . . . 13, 89, 91	. . . . . 1339, 1376
<code>\runoverindentvalue</code> . . . . .	<code>\sequencesectiontitlemiddleline</code> .
. . . . . 89, 96, 98, 125, 138,	. . . . . 1330, 1373
145, 157, 163, 177, 184, 202,	<code>\sequencesectiontitlenocontents</code> 1355
208, 219, 225, 235, 242, 244, 680	<code>\sequencesectiontitlenonotes</code> . . .
	. . . . . 1306, 1395
	<code>\sequencesubsectiontitle</code> . . . 31, 1405
	<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline</code>
	. . . . . 1436
	<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline</code>
	. . . . . 1454, 1502
	<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline</code>
	. . . . . 1445, 1500
	<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents</code>
	. . . . . 1219, 1413
	<code>\sequencesubsubsectiontitle</code> . . 1464
	<code>\sequencesubsubsectiontitlenocontents</code>
	. . . . . 1473
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitle</code> . 31, 1298	<code>\sequencetitle</code> . . . . . 31, 1254
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline</code>	<code>\sequencetitlefirstline</code> . . . . . 1263
. . . . . 1362	<code>\sequencetitlefont</code> . . . . . 39,
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline</code>	1255, 1265, 1274, 1283, 1307, 1561
. . . . . 1375	<code>\sequencetitlelastline</code> . . . . . 1263
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline</code>	<code>\sequencetitlemiddleline</code> . . . . . 1263
. . . . . 1372	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents</code>	
. . . . . 1348	

## S

<code>\sameword</code> . . . . . 22, 1735	
<code>\saverectoline</code> . . . . . 3118, 3220	
<code>\saverectoproseline</code> . . . . 3906, 3942	
<code>\saveverselinenumber</code> . . . . . 30, 682	
<code>\saveversoline</code> . . . . . 3112, 3166	
<code>\saveversoproseline</code> . . . . 3899, 3932	
<code>\sentencelabel</code> . . . . . 46, 2454	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitle</code> . 31, 1298	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline</code>	
. . . . . 1362	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline</code>	
. . . . . 1375	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline</code>	
. . . . . 1372	
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents</code>	
. . . . . 1348	

<code>\sequencetitlenonotes</code> . . . . .	1306	<code>\singlelinetitlefalse</code>	1132, 1137, 1142
<code>\sequencetitlepenalty</code> .	85, 1255, 1561	<code>\singlelinetitletrue</code> . . . . .	303, 1152
<code>\set@margp@emtitle</code> . . . . .		<code>\singlepageabbrev</code> . . . . .	419–421, 427
. 1511, 1522, 1529, 1541, 1550,		<code>\smallskip</code> . . . . .	66, 1672, 3974,
1561, 1572, 1581, 1590, 1599, 1608		3978, 3984, 3991, 4000, 4092, 4107	
<code>\set@p@emtitle</code> . .	37, 937, 950, 963,	<code>\sources</code> . . . . .	21, 1527, 1547,
974, 1053, 1100, 1107, 1112,		1556, 1569, 1578, 1587, 1596,	
1125, 1157, 1166, 1175, 1183,		1605, 1611, 1617, 1620, 1824, 2592	
1192, 1201, 1210, 1221, 1229,		<code>\sourcesfootnotesparafalse</code> . . . . .	325
1233, 1238, 1255, 1265, 1274,		<code>\space</code> . . . . .	2119, 2129
1283, 1291, 1299, 1307, 1314,		<code>\spacefactor</code> . . . . .	2818, 2823
1323, 1332, 1341, 1349, 1356,		<code>\speciallinelockfalse</code> . . . . .	
1364, 1379, 1389, 1402, 1406,		. . . . .	435, 651, 656, 2974
1414, 1421, 1429, 1438, 1447,		<code>\speciallinelocktrue</code> . . . . .	697,
1456, 1465, 1474, 1482, 1492, 1622		699, 702, 709, 714, 725, 728, 731	
<code>\setbox</code> . . . . .	543, 2846, 2864	<code>\stanza</code> . . . . .	430
<code>\setcontentsleaders</code> . . .	16, 1063, 1066	<code>stanza</code> (environment) . . . . .	12
<code>\setcounterfrompageref</code> . . . . .		<code>\stanzaatbottom</code> . . . . .	12, 2792, 2793
. . . . .	923, 1839, 2126, 3044, 3098	<code>\stanzaatbottomvalue</code> . . . . .	
<code>\setcounterfromref</code> . . . . .		. . . . .	431, 2792, 2969, 4016, 4122
. . . . .	1768, 2116, 2140, 2158, 3902, 3909	<code>\stanzalinestraddle</code> . . . . .	15, 443
<code>\setendnotessectiontitle</code> . . . . .		<code>\stanzaskip</code> . . . . .	69, 439, 2978
. . . . .	777, 837, 875, 911, 1950,	<code>\startparalleltextprose</code> . . .	51, 3923
3289, 3352, 3415, 3478, 3540, 3607		<code>\startparalleltexts</code> . . . . .	47, 2929
<code>\setendnotessectiontitledefaults</code>		<code>\startparalleltextsprose</code> . . . . .	3915
. . . . .	767, 778	<code>\startrectopage</code> . . . . .	48, 3191
<code>\setlemmarange</code> . . . . .	1754, 1792,	<code>\startrectoprosepage</code> . . . . .	51, 3934
1846, 1877, 1970, 2588, 2610,		<code>\startverseline</code> . . . . .	15, 713, 720
2627, 2650, 2687, 2722, 2757,		<code>\startversopage</code> . . . . .	48, 3136
3312, 3375, 3438, 3501, 3567, 3635		<code>\startversoprosepage</code> . . . . .	51, 3924
<code>\setmargpoemtitle</code> . . . . .	1511, 1538	<code>\stepcounter</code> . . . . .	581
<code>\setmargref</code> . . . . .		<code>\strictpagecheckfalse</code> . . . . .	597
. . . . .	1636, 1639, 1645, 1650, 1655, 2046	<code>\strictpagechecktrue</code> . . . . .	613, 2285
<code>\setmargrefmarker</code> . . . . .	35, 1632	<code>\strip</code> 1686, 1691, 1698, 1705, 1712,	
<code>\setmpargpoemtitle</code> . . . . .	35	1719, 1724, 1729, 1733, 1829,	
<code>\setpmlemmarange</code> . . . .	2001, 2468,	1927, 2663, 2700, 2735, 2770,	
2501, 2513, 2530, 2599, 2616, 2633		3303, 3366, 3429, 3492, 3556, 3623	
<code>\setpmmodulo</code> . . . . .	45, 2273	<code>\strut</code> . . . . .	510, 2840, 2857
<code>\setprosebysentence</code> . . . . .	44, 2264	<code>\strutbox</code> . . . . .	550, 2853, 2871
<code>\setproselemmarange</code> . . . . .		<code>\subsectiontitlefont</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	1986, 2141, 2178,	. . . . .	40, 1183, 1192, 1201,
2190, 2218, 2596, 2614, 2631,		1210, 1221, 1229, 1233, 1238,	
3652, 3669, 3698, 3715, 3732, 3761		1386, 1390, 1406, 1414, 1421,	
<code>\setproselemmastart</code> .	2089, 2142, 2149	1429, 1438, 1447, 1456, 1465,	
<code>\setprosemodulo</code> . . . . .	42, 2054	1474, 1482, 1492, 1590, 1599, 1608	
<code>\setsynchroflag</code> . . . . .	50, 3124	<code>\switchlinenumbers</code> . . . . .	2068, 2081
<code>\setverselinemodulo</code> . . . . .	12, 675	<code>\synchroflag</code> . . .	3124, 3125, 3130, 3131
<code>\shortpage</code> . . . . .	38, 4127	<code>\synchrolabel</code> . . . . .	50, 3127
<code>\sim</code> . . . . .	1735	<code>\synchroref</code> . . . . .	50, 3129
<code>\singlelineabbrev</code> . . . . .	378–380, 386		

T	
<code>\t@xtnotesinfo</code> . . . . .	38, 946, 959, 970,
	982, 1086, 1104, 1109, 1122,
	1161, 1170, 1179, 1188, 1196,
	1205, 1215, 1226, 1243, 1250,
	1261, 1269, 1278, 1287, 1296,
	1304, 1311, 1319, 1327, 1336,
	1345, 1353, 1360, 1369, 1384,
	1411, 1418, 1426, 1434, 1442,
	1451, 1461, 1471, 1479, 1486,
	1496, 1526, 1546, 1555, 1568,
	1577, 1586, 1595, 1604, 1626, 3108
<code>\testforauxonfirstrun</code> . . . . .	29, 4021
<code>\textcenteringturnedontrue</code> . . . . .	110
<code>\textfootnotesparatrue</code> . . . . .	323
<code>\textnote</code> . . . . .	22,
	1789, 1805, 1816, 1850, 1852, 2588
<code>\textnotes</code> . . . . .	825,
	826, 923, 925, 929, 992–994,
	1005–1009, 1088, 1644, 1691,
	1719, 1793, 1804, 1806, 1815,
	1817, 1829, 2179, 2234, 2236,
	2245, 2247, 2502, 2503, 2556,
	2558, 2566, 2568, 2782, 3956, 4073
<code>\textnotesatendfalse</code> . . . . .	2577
<code>\textnotesatendtrue</code> . . . . .	317
<code>\textnotesatfoot</code> . . . . .	26, 2575
<code>\textnotescontentsname</code> . . . . .	
	816–818, 3988, 4075
<code>\textnotesontrue</code> 823, 2576, 3276, 3339	
<code>\textnotestwocolfalse</code> . . . . .	821
<code>\textsuperscript</code> . . . . .	2271
<code>\textwidth</code> . . . . .	535, 2859, 2860
<code>\the</code> . . . . .	386, 387, 427, 428, 553,
	758, 759, 763, 833, 834, 837,
	871, 872, 875, 907, 908, 911,
	1037, 1043, 1559, 1637, 1640,
	1658, 1842, 1899, 2482, 2484,
	3028, 3034, 3047, 3082, 3088,
	3101, 3130, 3131, 3285, 3286,
	3289, 3348, 3349, 3352, 3411,
	3412, 3415, 3474, 3475, 3478,
	3536, 3537, 3540, 3603, 3604,
	3607, 3804, 3817, 3830, 3843,
	3858, 3875, 3981, 3988, 3995,
	4002, 4045, 4060, 4075, 4094,
	4109, 4112, 4155, 4156, 4158, 4164
<code>\thebotmarks</code> . . . . .	385, 387
<code>\thecp@cntr</code> . . . . .	581, 582
<code>\thefirstmarks</code> . . . . .	385–387
<code>\theindex</code> . . . . .	4146
<code>\thelemmaend</code> . . . . .	1773, 2163, 2475
<code>\thelemmalines</code> . . . . .	
	1758, 1766, 2146, 2155, 2474
<code>\thelineindexrepeat</code> . . . . .	668, 3132
<code>\themargrefnumber</code> . . . . .	1633, 1637, 1640
<code>\thenotepageholdernote</code> . . . . .	
	1785, 2171, 2491
<code>\thenotepageholdertitle</code> . . . . .	
	926, 1786, 2172, 2492
<code>\thepmemc@page</code> . . . . .	553, 557, 561
<code>\thepmindexcount</code> . . . . .	2354, 2385
<code>\thepmmodulo</code> . . . . .	2354, 2385
<code>\thepmparagraph</code> . . . . .	2333,
	2361, 2392, 2419, 2441, 2448, 2458
<code>\thepmsentencenumber</code> . . . . .	
	2299, 2321, 2333, 2336,
	2337, 2345, 2361, 2364, 2370,
	2376, 2392, 2395, 2401, 2407,
	2419, 2422, 2428, 2458, 2461, 2473
<code>\thepoemnumber</code> . . . . .	
	1018, 1021, 1030, 1033, 1039,
	1045, 1074, 1090, 3021, 3024,
	3030, 3036, 3075, 3078, 3084, 3090
<code>\theprintlineindex</code> . . . . .	668, 3132
<code>\theproselinenumber</code> . . . . .	
	2145, 2154, 2163, 2165
<code>\theprosepage</code> . . . . .	3897, 3902, 3909
<code>\theverselinenumber</code> . . . . .	
	627, 629, 631, 634, 636,
	639, 642–645, 663, 665, 738,
	1757, 1765, 1773, 1775, 2983–2985
<code>\thispagestyle</code> . . . . .	
	496–498, 500, 501, 503,
	754, 829, 868, 905, 998, 1933,
	2797, 2800, 3282, 3345, 3408,
	3471, 3534, 3601, 4010, 4116, 4151
<code>\tightgeometry</code> . . . . .	1
<code>\tightleading</code> . . . . .	10
<code>\titleconcat</code> . . . . .	1037,
	1038, 1043, 1044, 3028, 3029,
	3034, 3035, 3082, 3083, 3088, 3089
<code>\titleentryoverrun</code> . . . . .	457, 458, 464,
	466, 1053, 1061, 1511, 1519,
	1529, 1536, 3009, 3017, 3063, 3071
<code>\titlefirstlinefalse</code> . . . . .	305, 1149
<code>\titlefirstlinetrue</code> . . . . .	1133
<code>\titleincrement</code> . . . . .	270, 1036,
	1037, 1042, 1043, 3027, 3028,
	3033, 3034, 3081, 3082, 3087, 3088

<code>\titleindent</code> . . . . .	10, 64, 1184, 1193, 1202, 1211, 1222, 1230, 1234, 1239, 1292, 1300, 1315, 1324, 1333, 1342, 1350, 1357, 1365, 1380, 1386, 1390, 1403, 1407, 1415, 1422, 1430, 1439, 1448, 1457, 1466, 1475, 1483, 1493, 1573, 1582, 1591, 1600, 1609	<code>\verseline</code> . . . . .	12, <u>650</u>
<code>\titleindentamount</code> . . . . .	. 61, 64, 65, 1185, 1193, 1202, 1212, 1223, 1231, 1235, 1293, 1301, 1316, 1324, 1333, 1342, 1351, 1358, 1366, 1381, 1390, 1403, 1574, 1583, 1592, 1601, 1610	<code>\verselinenumbergutter</code> . . . .	12, <u>612</u>
<code>\titleindentthreeamount</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 63, 1468, 1476, 1484	<code>\verselinenumbersouter</code> . . . .	12, <u>612</u>
<code>\titleindenttwoamount</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 62, 1240, 1408, 1416, 1423, 1431, 1439, 1448, 1458, 1493	<code>\verselinenumbersswitch</code> . . . .	12, <u>612</u>
<code>\titlelastlinefalse</code> . . . . .	309, 1151	<code>\verselinenumberstoleft</code> . . . .	12, <u>604</u>
<code>\titlelastlinetrue</code> . . . . .	1143	<code>\verselinenumberstoright</code> . . . .	12, <u>604</u>
<code>\titlemiddlelinefalse</code> . . . .	307, 1150	<code>\verselinenumberstrue</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 278, 314, 824, 864, 900, 2643, 2680, 2715, 2750, 3278, 3341, 3404, 3467, 3529, 3596
<code>\titlemiddlelinetrue</code> . . . . .	1138	<code>\versemarginadjust</code> 13, 106, 107, 133, 136, 152, 155, 175, 195, 199, 217	
<code>\titlesofar</code> . . . . .	269, 1035, 1037, 1041, 1043, 3026, 3028, 3032, 3034, 3080, 3082, 3086, 3088	<code>\versephantom</code> . . . . .	14, <u>692</u>
<code>\titletoothernotes</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 1836, 1872, 1892, 1963, 3053, 3110, 3164, 3219, 3925, 3935	<code>\verserightflushfalse</code> . . . . .	311
<code>\toks@</code> . . . . .	1898, 1899	<code>\versewidth</code> . . . . .	11, 478, 1679
<code>\tolerance</code> . . . . .	764, 838, 876, 912, 1954, 3290, 3353, 3416, 3479, 3541, 3608, 4129, 4159	<code>\versoemendation</code> . . . . .	49, <u>3424</u>
<code>\topsep</code> . . . . .	28, 452, 462, 4138, 4175, 4183	<code>\versoemendations</code> . . . . .	3403, 3405, 3429, 3432, 3443, 3686, 3828
<code>\tsaccidental</code> . . . . .	<u>1812</u>	<code>\versoemendationscontentsname</code> . .	. . . . . 3394, 3395, 3397, 3830
<code>\tsentry</code> . . . . .	24, <u>1821</u>	<code>\versoemendationsheadername</code> . . .	. . . . . 3391–3393, 3411, 3412
<code>\tsvariant</code> . . . . .	24, <u>1812</u>	<code>\versoemendationsname</code> 3388–3390, 3415	
<code>\tweakbrokenline</code> . . . . .	14, <u>694</u>	<code>\versoemendationspendingfalse</code> . .	. . . . . 2916, 3157
<code>\tweakstartverseline</code> . . . . .	15, <u>719</u>	<code>\versoemendationspendingtrue</code> . .	3180
<code>\typeout</code> . . . . .	4026, 4030	<code>\versoemendationstwocolfalse</code> . .	3400
		<code>\versoexplanations</code> . . . . .	3530, 3531, 3556, 3560, 3572, 3703, 3854
		<code>\versoexplanationscontentsname</code> .	. . . . . 3520, 3521, 3523, 3858
		<code>\versoexplanationsheadername</code> . .	. . . . . 3517–3519, 3536, 3537
		<code>\versoexplanationsname</code> . . . . .	. . . . . 3514–3516, 3540
		<code>\versoexplanationspendingfalse</code> .	. . . . . 2920, 3161
		<code>\versoexplanationspendingtrue</code> . .	. . . . . 3186, 3240
		<code>\versoexplanationstwocolfalse</code> .	3526
		<code>\versoexplanatory</code> 49, 3549, 3550, 3565	
		<code>\versofalse</code> . . . .	2878, 3166, 3218, 3258
		<code>\versom@ken@teholder</code> . . . .	3016, 3018
		<code>\versoparaopenfalse</code> . . . . .	3894
		<code>\versoparapendingfalse</code> . .	3892, 3931
		<code>\versoparapendingtrue</code> . . . . .	3931
		<code>\versopassagestillopenfalse</code> . .	3882
		<code>\versopoempendingfalse</code> . .	2882, 3149
		<code>\versopoempendingtrue</code> . .	3168, 3174
<b>U</b>			
<code>\undefined</code> . . . . .	2059		
<b>V</b>			
<code>\v@riablemarginpar</code> . . . . .	112, 119		
<code>\vadjust</code> 509, 510, 2829, 2840, 2856, 2857			
<code>\variabledateindent</code> . . . . .	1677, 1682		
<code>\vbox</code> . . . . .	540, 2832, 2843, 2861		
<code>\verseindent</code> . . . . .	14, 59		

<code>\versopoemstillopenfalse</code> .....	2894, 3196, 3200	<code>\voladditionalamount</code> ..	72, 4181, 4182
<code>\versopoemstillopenttrue</code> .	3169, 3175	<code>\volumeattribution</code> .....	19, 1660
<code>\versopoemtitle</code> .....	48, 3001	<code>\volumededication</code> .....	1660
<code>\versopoemtitlenocontents</code> ..	48, 3049	<code>\volumeepigraph</code> .....	19, 1660
<code>\versoproseemendation</code> .....	3665	<code>\volumefirststyle</code> .....	366
<code>\versoproseexplanatory</code> .....	3694	<code>\volumeheader</code> .....	19, 330, 335, 336
<code>\versoprosesectionpendingfalse</code>	2899	<code>\volumeheadervalue</code> .....	
<code>\versoprosesectionstillopenfalse</code>	2903	.....	330, 347, 359, 395, 410
<code>\versoprosetextnote</code> .	3648, 3673, 3675	<code>\volumeesection</code> .....	935
<code>\versoquotedversependingfalse</code> .	2908	<code>\volumeesectiontitle</code> .....	19, 949
<code>\versoquotedversestillopenfalse</code>	2912	<code>\volumesubtitle</code> .....	19, 949
<code>\versoset@p@emtitle</code> .	3003, 3008, 3050	<code>\volumesubtitlefont</code> ....	37, 985, 999
<code>\versostanzapendingfalse</code> .	2886, 3153	<code>\volumetitle</code> .....	19, 936
<code>\versostanzapendingtrue</code> .....	3172	<code>\volumetitlefirstline</code> .....	19, 949
<code>\versostanzastillopenfalse</code>	2890, 3194	<code>\volumetitlefont</code> .....	
<code>\versostanzastillopenttrue</code> .....	3173	.....	36, 937, 951, 964, 975, 1622
<code>\versotextnote</code> .....	49	<code>\volumetitlelastline</code> .....	19, 949
<code>\versotextnotes</code> .....	3298	<code>\volumetitlemiddleline</code> .....	19, 962
<code>\versotextnotes</code> .....	3277,	<code>\volumetitlepage</code> .....	494
3279, 3303, 3306, 3317, 3657, 3802		<code>\volumetitlepage (environment)</code> ...	19
<code>\versotextnotescontentsname</code> ....		<code>\volumetitleshift</code> .....	71, 986
.....	3268, 3269, 3271, 3804	<code>\volumetitleshiftamount</code> .....	70, 71
<code>\versotextnotesheadername</code> .....		<code>\volumetitlesink</code> .....	42, 937, 950
.....	3265–3267, 3285, 3286	<code>\volumetitlestyle</code> .....	401
<code>\versotextnotesname</code> .	3262–3264, 3289	<code>\volumetitle{}</code> .....	936
<code>\versotextnotestwocolfalse</code> ....	3274	<code>\vss</code> .....	547, 548, 550, 2837,
<code>\versotitleholder</code> 2993, 2996, 3020,		2850, 2851, 2853, 2868, 2869, 2871	
3023, 3026, 3029, 3032, 3035, 3047		<code>\vtop</code> ..	543, 549, 2846, 2852, 2864, 2870
<code>\versotitleinnotescheck</code> ...	3053,		
3311, 3437, 3565, 3650, 3667, 3696			
<code>\versotitletoothernotes</code> ...	3041,		
3053, 3164, 3306, 3432, 3560, 3925			
<code>\versotrue</code> .....	3163		

## W

<code>\wedge</code> .....	1736
<code>\wholebooktitle</code> .....	19, 932
<code>\widowpenalty</code> .....	53

## X

<code>\xdef</code> .....	1899
--------------------------	------